

中文講解

英文正誤法

AGUIDE  
TO  
CORRECT ENGLISH

(H. H. Shao) 邵 鴻 壽

~~I 46527~~

世界書局印行  
THE WORLD BOOK CO., LTD.  
SHANGHAI, CHINA

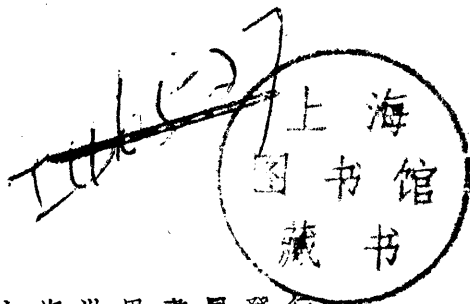
上海图书馆藏书



A541 212 0017 5851B

中文講解  
英文正誤法  
A GUIDE TO CORRECT ENGLISH

邵鴻壽 (H. H. Shao)



上海世界書局發行

THE WORLD BOOK CO., LTD.

SHANGHAI

## 英文正誤法引言

蕭伯納的劇本 Pygmalion 裏，有一位自作聰明的紳士，因為劇中的女主人公會說 Pure English 而斷定她是一個外國的公主，因為「沒有一個英國人會說那樣好的英語的」。可見就是在英國人中也很少人能說真正完善的英語，那麼以中英文相去距離之遠，我國人在說英語寫英文的時候，種種的錯誤百出，自然更無足深責了，雖然犯這種錯誤的人，也許還不是一個初中學生，而竟或是一個具有相當英文根柢的人。雖然這麼說，犯了錯誤總不能讓它一直錯下去，能夠把它糾正過來還是要糾正過來的，因此我希望這一本小小的書，能夠對於一般的「初中學生」，甚或至於「具有相當英文根柢的人」，盡它對症發藥的功能。這裏面並沒有像 I is, two dog 一類最粗淺的基本的文法上錯誤的指正；這裏面所列舉的，都是日常最易無心造成的錯誤，尤其是我們中國人最易忽略過去的錯誤，一一用簡單明白的例句和講解，加以說明。學者把本書讀了之後，如果能從此留心，少犯幾個貽笑大方的錯誤，那麼編者就要馨香以禱之了。

民國二十八年四月三十日編者

# 中文講解 英文正誤法

## 目次

### 第一章 關於名詞的錯誤

I. 關於名詞的數 (Number) 的錯誤.....	1
練習 (一) .....	4
II. 關於名詞的所有格的誤用 .....	4
練習 (二) .....	7
III. 幾個最容易錯用的名詞.....	8
練習 (三) .....	12

### 第二章 關於代名詞的錯誤

I. 關於代名詞的格 (case) 的錯誤.....	13
練習 (四) .....	16
II. 關於代名詞的位置 (positions) 的錯誤.....	16
III. 關於代名詞的一致 (agreement) 的錯誤...	18
練習 (五) .....	19
IV. 關於代名詞的其他錯誤.....	20
練習 (六) .....	22
V. 關於形容詞的比較的錯誤.....	23
練習 (七) .....	26

### 第三章 關於形容詞的錯誤

I.	容易誤用爲其他詞類的形容詞.....	28
	練習 (八) .....	29
II.	關於冠詞 (Articles) 的錯誤.....	30
	練習 (九) .....	32
	習練 (十) .....	36
III.	最易誤用的幾個形容詞 .....	37
	練習 (十一) .....	41

### 第四章 關於動詞的錯誤

I.	關於動詞的主要部份的錯誤.....	43
	練習 (十二) .....	49
II.	關於動詞的一致 (agreement) 的錯誤 .....	50
	練習 (十三) .....	53
III.	關於動詞的時態 (Tense) 的錯誤.....	54
	練習 (十四) .....	57
	練習 (十五) .....	58
	練習 (十六) .....	58
	練習 (十七) .....	60
	練習 (十八) .....	61
IV.	條件句中的時態及其他.....	62
V.	關於動詞語態的錯誤.....	65
	練習 (十九) .....	68
VI.	關於助動詞的錯誤.....	68
	練習 (二十) .....	72

VII.	關於不定詞 (Infinitives) 的錯誤	73
	練習 (二十一)	76
VIII.	關於分詞 (Participles) 的錯誤	77
	練習 (二十二)	80
	練習 (二十三)	81
	練習 (二十四)	81
IX.	幾個誤用的動詞	82
	練習 (二十五)	86
	練習 (二十六)	90
	練習 (二十七)	94

## 第五章 關於副詞 (Adverbs) 的錯誤

	練習 (二十八)	99
	練習 (二十九)	104
	練習 (三十)	104

## 第六章 關於介系詞 (Prepositions) 的錯誤

I.	名詞前面的介系詞	106
	練習 (三十一)	109
	練習 (三十二)	110
	練習 (三十三)	114
	練習 (三十四)	115
	練習 (三十五)	119
	練習 (三十六)	120
	練習 (三十七)	124
	練習 (三十八)	124

II.	名詞後面的介系詞 .....	125
	練習 (三十九) .....	128
	練習 (四十) .....	129
	練習 (四十一) .....	133
	練習 (四十二) .....	134
III.	形容詞與過去分詞後面的介系詞 .....	235
	練習 (四十三) .....	138
	練習 (四十四) .....	139
IV.	動詞後面的介系詞 .....	140
	練習 (四十五) .....	143
	練習 (四十六) .....	144
	練習 (四十七) .....	148
	練習 (四十八) .....	148
V.	必要的介系詞的省去 .....	149
	練習 (四十九) .....	152
VI.	不必要的介系詞的插入 .....	153
	練習 (五十) .....	157
	練習 (五十一) .....	161
V I.	常被誤用的介系詞和複合介系詞 .....	162
	練習 (五十二) .....	168

## 第七章 連接詞 (Conjunctions)

I.	連接詞的誤省 .....	170
II.	不必要的連接詞 .....	171
	練習 (五十三) .....	173



III. 連接詞與複合連接詞的誤用 .....	174
練習 (五十四) .....	179

## 第 八 章 字 序 (Order of Words)

I. 問句中的字序 .....	182
II. 形容詞修飾詞 (Adjectival Modifier) 的位 置 .....	184
練習 (五十五) .....	186
III. 副詞修飾詞 (Adverbial Modifier) 的位置 .....	188
練習 (五十六) .....	191
IV. 關於字序的其他錯誤 .....	192
練習 (五十七) .....	195

## 第 九 章 常 被 混 用 的 字 語

練習 (五十八) .....	201
練習 (五十九) .....	207
練習 (六十) .....	214
練習 (六十一) .....	221
練習 (六十二) .....	227

## 第 十 章 常 被 誤 讀 的 字

練習答案 .....	239
------------	-----

# 中文講解 英文正誤法

## 第一章 關於名詞的錯誤

### I. 關於名詞的數 (Number) 的錯誤

#### § 1. 單複數同形的名詞：一

誤： I saw three *deers* yesterday.

正： I saw three *deer* yesterday.

譯： 昨天我看見三隻鹿。

誤： How many *sheeps* do you see?

正： How many *sheep* do you see?

譯： 你看見幾隻羊？

【講解】 有幾個名詞的單數和複數 (singular and plural) 的形式是相同的，例如上面的 deer 和 sheep。它們用作複數時，絕不能在字尾加“s”。單複同形的名詞除 deer 和 sheep 外，還有 cash (中國小錢)，dozen (一打)，score (二十) 等；不過像 dozens of times (許多次)，scores of bombs (許多炸彈) 和 packed in dozens (一打一打裝) 等是例外的，因為這裏的 scores 和 dozens 前面

沒有表示「數」的字，否則前面有表示數的字，它們總是沒有“s”語尾的，如 a dozen (一打)，two dozen (二打)，several dozen (數打)，two score (四十) 等。又 *li* 是「里」的音譯，複數時也不加“s”。

### § 2. 與數目字合成一字的名詞：一

誤： I have an *eight-days* clock.

正： I have an *eight-day* clock.

譯： 我有一只能走八天的鐘。

誤： His *three-years* old son died this morning.

正： His *three-year* old son died this morning.

譯： 他的三歲的兒子今晨死去。

誤： This is a *five-dollars* note.

正： This is a *five-dollar* note.

譯： 這是一張五元紙幣。

【講解】 平時 *day*, *year*, *dollar* 等字改爲複數，須加個“s”於字尾。但它們與數目字如 *two*, *three*, *four* 等合成一字而有複數的含義時“s”就不應再加上去。

### § 3. 數字組成之名詞 (compound nouns)：一

誤： He has several *daughter-in-laws*.

正： He has several *daughters-in-law*.

譯： 他有數個媳婦。

誤：The two young men are that old man's  
*son-in-laws*.

正：The two young men are that old man's  
*sons-in-law*.

譯：這兩個青年是那個老人的女婿。

【講解】 數字合成之名詞變為複數時應在主要字之後加“s”。如 *daughter-in-law* 的主要字是 *daughter*, *son-in-law* 的主要字是 *son*, 所以它們變成複數時“s”應加在 *daughter* 與 *son* 的後面。

§ 4. 無法可數的名詞 (uncountable nouns):—

誤：His *beards* were long.

正：His *beard* was long.

譯：他的鬚長。

誤：His *hairs* are short.

正：His *hair* is short.

譯：他的髮短。

誤：The air is full of *dusts* and *smokes*.

正：The air is full of *dust* and *smoke*.

譯：空氣充滿塵烟。

【講解】 *beard*, *hair*, *dust*, *smoke* 等在事實上都是不能數的物質，凡名詞之表示不能數的物質的沒有複數。抽象名詞 (*abstract noun*) 所表示的都不能數，當然也沒有複數，如 *idleness*, *goodness*, *cruelty* 等。

## 練習 (1)

下面句子中的名詞的數如有錯誤就把它們改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. He bought ten dozens books yesterday.
2. Commander-in-chiefs are very powerful.
3. Score of people were killed.
4. Your coat is covered with dusts.
5. The village is ten *lis* away from the city.
6. Her hairs flowed loose over her shoulders.
7. Her three-months old baby is a girl.
8. I have two score exercise books.
9. He shaves his beards everyday.
10. Do you see the bees and sheeps?
11. Enclosed please find two ten-dollars notes.
12. He treated his servant with great cruelties.
13. Smokes are harmful to our health.
14. Chinese cashes are still used in Bali (荷屬東印度一小島).
15. He told the story dozen of times.

## II. 關於名詞的所有格的誤用

§ 5. 複數名詞的所有格

誤： The *pupils's* books are closed.

正： The *pupils'* books are closed.

譯：這些學生的書閉着。

誤：The *ladie's* dressing-room is over there.

正：The *ladies'* dressing-room is over there.

譯：女子的盥洗室在那首。

誤：The *thieve's* leader is a young man.

正：The *thieves'* leader is a young man.

譯：這些賊的領袖是一個青年。

【講解】上面 pupils's 的錯誤是由於一般學生只知呆板應用加“s”於名詞以成所有格這條原則所致。至於 *ladie's* 和 *thieve's* 的錯誤是由於他們誤認 *lady* 和 *thief* 之成複數是與 *man*, *child* 等字同樣地沒有一定規則所致；他們以爲 *men's*, *children's* 等字中的“,”是在“s”的前面，所以以爲 *ladies* 與 *thieves* 變成所有格時，“,”也應該放在“s”的前面，至於 *lady* 與 *thief* 的複數是 *ladies*, *thieves* 還是 *ladie*, *thieve*, 他們卻根本忽略了。他們應熟記下面這條規則，以免重犯這種錯誤：一

『複數名詞的字尾如果是“s”，變成所有格時，只加“,”在這個“s”的後面』。

*men* 是複數但字尾不是 *s*, 故變成所有格時，應照普通規則加“s”。*pupils*, *ladies*, *thieves* 也是複數，但字尾是 *s*, 故變成所有格時，應照上面的則規，只加“,”於“s”之後。

## § 6. 表示無生命之物的名詞與所有格

誤： The wind blew down the *houses'* walls.

正： The wind blew down the walls *of the houses*.

譯： 風把這些屋的牆吹倒。

誤： This *class's* students are all boys.

正： The students *of this class* are all boys.

譯： 這班的學生都是男生。

【講解】 指稱無生物的名詞作所有格時，普通用 *of* 來表示，而不能加“s”。不過有些指稱無生物的名詞也可加“s”來表示所有格，這些名詞大都是表示時間，空間，重量，擬人的東西及幾種莊嚴的事物等。還有幾句習用語中的名詞，它們雖不指生物但往往也用“s”來表示所有格。茲舉例如下：—

(a) 表示時間的： a *day's* journey (一日的旅行)，  
a *week's* vacation (一星期的假日)，*New-year's* Day  
(元旦)。

(b) 表示空間的： a *boat's* length (一只船的長度)，  
a *stone's* throw (一擲石所能達到的距離，近距離)，  
a *hair's* breadth (一髮之間)。

(c) 表示重量的： a *pound's* weight (一磅之重)，  
a *ton's* weight (一噸之重)。

(d) 擬人的東西： *fortune's* favourites (幸運的寵兒)，  
*sorrow's* tears (愁的淚)。

(e) 莊嚴的事物: the *court's* decree (法庭的判詞), the *heaven's* will (天意), the *ocean's* roar (海洋的洶湧聲), the *moon's* crescent (新月), *soul's* delight (內心的快樂)。

(f) 習用語: for *mercy's* sake (爲慈悲起見), at his *wit's* end (他智窮而不知所措), at his *fingers' ends* (熟知, 瞭如指掌), the *ship's* passengers (船客), the *boat's* crew (船上的船員們)。

### 練習 (2)

改正下面關於名詞所有格的錯誤, 不錯的不必改:—

1. The door's handle has been broken.
2. This town's streets are dirty.
3. We shall have a month's holiday.
4. The birds's nests were broken.
5. The garden's fruit is ripe.
6. The flie's humming (嗡嗡聲) is annoying (使人討厭)。
7. I will give you five minutes's grace (五分鐘的寬限)。
8. The clock's hands (針) were pointing to six.
9. It is heaven's will.
10. It was within a hair's breadth of overflowing (它幾乎要泛濫了)。



### III. 幾個最容易錯用的名詞

#### § 7. alumni

誤： He is an *alumni* of our school.

正： He is an *alumus* of our school.

譯： 他是我們學校的畢業生（校友）。

【講解】 *alumni* 一字是複數，它的單數是 *alumus*。可是前者常被一般的學生作複數單數通用，即大學生將此字誤用的也不少。

#### § 8. work

誤： They have not been paid for their *works* yet.

正： They have not been paid for their *work* yet.

譯： 他們對於他們的工作還沒有受到酬報。

【講解】 *work* 是指勞動或工作而言，它是不能數的，所以沒有複數。複數式的 *works* 是指著作，防禦工程，工廠，機械等而言。

#### § 9. body

誤： My *body* is healthy.

正： I am healthy.

譯： 我身體健康。

【講解】 *body* 一字不可濫用在表示康健的場所。My *body* is well, You have a good *body* 等都是不妥的，我們應說 I am well, You are well built 等。

§ 10. people

誤： Who are those *peoples* standing there?

正： Who are those *people* standing there?

譯： 站在那邊的那些人是誰？

【講解】 *People* 原有「多數」的含義，所以不應再加複數語尾的“s”。但表示兩個或兩個以上的民族時，*people* 可加“s”語尾作成複數，如 The *peoples* of the world should unite in outlawing war for ever (世界各民族應聯合起來把戰爭永久認爲非法行爲)。

§ 11. contempt

誤： He *contempted* his teacher.

正： He *despised* his teacher.

正： He *held* his teacher *in contempt*.

譯： 他輕視他的先生。

誤： He *contempted* the teacher's warning.

正： He *disregarded* the teacher's warning.

譯： 他輕視先生的警告。

【講解】 *contempt* 是名詞，絕不能當動詞用。

§ 12. information

誤： He gave me all the *informations* he had.

正： He gave me all the *information* he had.

譯： 他把所有的消息都告訴我。

【講解】 *information* 不可用複數式，因為 *information* 的內容是不能數的。

§ 13. knowledge

誤： We gain our *knowledges* step by step.

正： We gain our *knowledge* step by step.

譯： 我們逐步獲得我們的學問。

【講解】 *knowledge* 也是不能數的東西，所以不可用複數式。

§ 14. liking

誤： This is my most *liking* sport.

正： This is my *favourite* sport.

正： This is the sport I *like* best.

譯： 這是最喜愛的運動。

【講解】 *liking* 是名詞，絕不能誤作形容詞用。

§ 15. plenty

誤： We have *plenty* time.

正： We have *plenty of* time.

譯： 我們有很多時間。

【講解】 *plenty* 是一個名詞，不能誤作形容詞用。

§ 16. reason

誤：The *reason* why we study is because we have to.

正：The *reason* why we study is that we have to.

譯：我們讀書的理由是我們必須要讀書。

【講解】 *reason* 用作主詞 (subject) 時，繫動詞 (linking verb) 之後不能接以 *because*, *because of*, *due to*, *owing to*, *on account of* 等開首的語句，而應該接以 *that* 開首的名詞子句 (noun clause)。

§ 17. trousers

誤：Yesterday he wore a short *trouser*.

正：Yesterday he wore short *trousers*.

正：Yesterday he wore a pair of short *trousers*.

譯：昨天他穿短褲。

【講解】 *trousers* 總是複數的。「一條褲」不是 a *trouser*，也不是 a *trousers*，而是 a pair of *trousers*。

§ 18. scissors

誤：It is a bad *scissor*.

正：It is a pair of bad *scissors*.

正：They are bad *scissors*.

譯：這是一把鈍的剪刀。

【講解】 *scissors* 也總是複數的。「一把剪刀」不是 a scissor, 也不是 a scissors, 而是 a pair of scissors.

### § 19. ammunition

誤: They exhausted all their *ammunitions*.

正: They exhausted all their *ammunition*.

譯: 他們已把他們的彈藥用完。

【講解】 *ammunition* 是一個集合名詞, 它包含火藥, 子彈等。這名詞沒有複數式。

### 練習 (3)

把下面錯用的名詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. His body looks healthy.
2. I am asking for informations.
3. The government supplied the troops with abundant ammunitions.
4. There is plenty snow.
5. This is my most liking book.
6. This scissor is new.
7. The reason why he refused it was because he did not like it.
8. He is an alumni of your college.
9. Pay attention to your work.
10. There are many peoples in the room.
11. He contempered his enemy.
12. He has some knowledge of music.
13. This trouser is too short.

## 第二章 關於代名詞的錯誤

### I. 關於代名詞的格 (case) 的錯誤

#### § 20. It is 後面的格：一

誤： It is *me*.

正： It is *I*.

譯： 是我。

【講解】 It is 後面的補語 (complement) 如果是一個代名詞或名詞，這代名詞或名詞的格總是主格 (nominative case), It is me 中的 *me* 是一個受格 (objective case) 的代名詞，故應改為主格的 *I*。總之 It is (*it was, it has been, it will be*) 後面應用 *I, we, he, she, they* 等，而不應用 *me, us, him, her, them* 等。

#### § 21. than 後面的格：一

誤： You are stronger than *me*.

正： You are stronger than *I*.

譯： 你比我來得強壯。

【講解】 than 是一個連接詞 (conjunction)，它後面所接的是一句子句 (clause)。上面的錯誤一方面由於犯者不明白這類句子，一方面由於犯者誤認它為介系詞 (preposition)。如果他知道上面句子的整句結構是 *You are*

stronger than I am strong 同時不知道 than 不過是個連接詞，他也許不會犯這錯誤的。不過在 than 後面用受格 (objective case) 的代名詞也是常有的，但這個代名詞並不是 than 的受詞 (object) 而是動詞或介系詞的受詞，例如 I love you better than him; I am more afraid of you than of him. I love you better than him 等於 I love you better than I love him, 這個 him 就是 love 的受詞。I love you better than he 等於 I love you better than he loves you, 這 he 就是 loves 的主詞。I am more afraid of you than of him 等於 I am more afraid of you than I am afraid of him, 這 him 是 of 的受詞。

在 He is a man than whom no one is better able to judge 這類句子中的 than, 有的文法家認為是介系詞，不過這類句子很少，所以一般地講，than 是一個連接詞，而不是純粹的介系詞。

§ 22. to 與 we students; between 與 you and I:—

誤: It is important to *we* students.

正: It is important to *us* students.

譯: 這對我們學生是重要的。

誤: There is no secret between you and *I*.

正: There is no secret between you and *me*.

譯: 你我之間沒有祕密。

【講解】學生中有的把 *we students, we boys, we girls* 等片語叫得太熟了，以致與介系詞 *to* 或 *for* 連起來的時候仍把主格的 *we* 留着而不改用受格的 *us*。同樣地，他們把 *you and I* 讀得很順口，以致有時與介系詞 *between* 連用起來，就忘把主格的 *I* 改爲受格的 *me*。他們對於「介系詞後的代名詞應該是受格」這一條規則也許是知道的，不過在上述的情形下他們把它疏忽了。

§ 23. who 和 whom:—

誤: *Who* do you suppose I met on the street?

正: *Whom* do you suppose I met on the street?

譯: 你想我在街上遇見誰?

誤: He is the boy *whom* I think will succeed.

正: He is the boy *who* I think will succeed.

譯: 他是我認爲會成功的孩子。

【講解】各種代名詞如爲主詞應用主格代名詞；如爲受詞應用受格代名詞。學生中往往在應用受格代名詞 *whom* 的時候反用主格代名詞 *who*，而在應用主格代名詞 *who* 的時候反用受格代名詞 *whom*。上面 *Who do you suppose I met on the street?* 中的疑問代名詞 (interrogative pronoun) *who* 應改作 *whom*，因爲它是 *met* 的受詞，犯者誤認它是 *suppose* 的主詞，所以誤用了 *who*。 *He is the boy whom I think will succeed* 中的關係代名詞 (relative pronoun) *whom* 應改作 *who*，因爲它



是 will succeed 的主詞，犯者誤認它是 think 的受詞，所以誤用了 whom.

### 練習 (4)

把適當的代名詞填在下面的空格中：—

1. Smoking is not necessary for — boys
2. — are you thinking of?
3. Between you and —, I think him a fool.
4. You are cleverer than —.
5. It was — that ran away with their important documents (文件).
6. — do you think will win?
7. — students should always study hard.
8. It is useful to — girls.
9. He likes you better than ( — ):
10. You can write better than —.

## II. 關於代名詞的位置 (position) 的錯誤

### § 24. 人稱代名詞 (personal pronouns):—

誤: *I and you* shall go there next year.

正: *You and I* shall go there next year.

譯: 你和我將於明年往那邊去。

誤： It belongs to *me* and *him*.

正： It belongs to *him* and *me*.

譯： 這屬於他和我。

誤： I like both *your sister* and *you*.

正： I like both *you* and *your sister*.

譯： 你和你的姐姐(妹妹)我都喜歡。

【講解】 當第一人稱代名詞和其他人稱代名詞或指人的名詞連用時，爲表示謙恭起見，第一人稱代名詞，放在最後。第二人稱代名詞則用於其他人稱之前。所以各人稱代名詞連用時的次序是這樣的：第二人稱，第三人稱，第一人稱。

§ 25. 關係代名詞 (relative pronouns)：—

誤： I find some mistakes in *your* sentences which you should not make.

正： I find in *your* sentences some mistakes which you should not make.

譯： 我在你的句子中發見幾個你不應犯的錯誤。

誤： The boys are studying in the room who are my cousins.

正： The boys who are studying in the room are my cousins.

譯： 在室中讀書的孩子是我的表兄弟。

【講解】 在 I find some mistakes in your sentences which you should not make 中的關係代名詞 which 看

起來似指 sentences, 而實際是指 mistakes. 在 The boys are studying in the room who are my cousins 中的關係代名詞 who 看起來好像是 are 的主詞而實際是 are studying 的主詞, 並且 are 的主詞實際上是 boys 而非 who. 這兩句的毛病, 在把關係代名詞與前述詞 (antecedent) 隔得太遠, 如果把關係代名詞放在前述詞的最近處就不至發生這種含糊的毛病了。

### III. 關於代名詞的一致 (agreement) 的錯誤

#### § 26. 不定代名詞 (indefinite pronoun):—

誤: Everyone loves *their* parents.

正: Everyone loves *his* parents.

譯: 各人都愛他的父母。

【講解】 Everyone 是單數, their 則是複數, 故在數的方面 their 與它的前述詞 Everyone 是不符合的。這個錯誤也許是由直譯中文所致, 因為在華語中確有「各人都愛他的父母」的說法 (這裏的「他們」是不合理的, 就是「都」也不見得合理, 但我國的語言有的地方確是不能以西洋的文法觀念來解釋的, 所以有許多我們認為不合理的地方, 我們只有以「習慣用法」四字視之)。

§ 27. 關係代名詞 (relative pronoun) 與述部動詞 (predicate verb)

誤： I, who *is* so poor, cannot afford to pay.

正： I, who *am* so poor, cannot afford to pay.

譯： 我這樣窮，無力付給。

【講解】 關係代名詞與述部動詞應在數，格與人稱方面一致，但關係代名詞的數，格與人稱是以前述詞而定的，故述部動詞的數，格，人稱也要以關係代名詞的前述詞為依歸。上面的錯誤在我國學習英語者的中間極通常，原因在於他們對 *who is* 或 *who are* 已經練得相當地熟，而 *who am* 對於他們反覺生硬，所以在上面的那種句子中把一致的規則忽略了。

練習 (5)

把下面的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. I find a picture in the bookstore which is quite to my taste (很合我的口味).
2. I and you are good friends.
3. There is a difference of two years between my age and his.
4. Everyone has their shortcomings (缺點).
5. Nothing is possible for me, who is so sick and weak.

6. The girl is weeping who lost her watch yesterday.
7. I, two classmates, a teacher, and my brother were present.
8. My house and yours are both new.
9. It is I who has lost a book.
10. Your brother, you, and I belong to the same club (俱樂部).

#### IV. 關於代名詞的其他錯誤

##### § 28. whomever 與 whoever

誤: I will reward *whomever* gives information.

正: I will reward *whoever* gives information.

譯: 任何通報的人我定將酬賞。

誤: *Whoever* I meet will be given a flower.

正: *Whomever* I meet will be given a flower.

譯: 我所遇見的任何人都將給以一朵花。

【講解】 *whoever* 與 *whomever* 是複合關係代名詞，就是說它們一方面是前述詞，一方面又是關係代名詞。*whoever* 在主格，*whomever* 則在受格。至於在句中應該用主格的 *whoever*，還是應該用受格的 *whomever*，則要看它們的關係代名詞方面的格而定。爲明晰起見，我們可把

whoever 看作 anyone who, whomever 看作 anyone whom, anyone 可看作前述詞, who 與 whom 就是關係代名詞。如果在一句句中我們可用 anyone who, 則我們就可用 whoever, 如果可用 anyone whom, 則我們就用 whomever. I will reward whomever gives information 中的 whomever 如改爲 anyone whom, 我們就可立即看出它的錯誤, 因爲 whom 成了 gives 的主詞, 在格方面是錯誤的, 就是說, 受格的 whom 不能當主詞用; 這樣 whomever 就應該改爲 whoever 了。這個錯誤的原因在於犯者誤認 whomever 與 whoever 的用法是由它們的前述詞方面的格而定; 在上面的句中他只知道 whomever 是 reward 的受詞而未注意它的關係代名詞方面是 gives 的主詞。同樣地, 在 Whoever I meet will be given a flower 中, 犯者只知道 whoever 是 will be given 的主詞而未注意關係代名詞方面是 meet 的受詞。所以這兩句句中 whoever 與 whomever 的誤用是出於同一原因的。總之學者用這兩字時應知它們的應用是由它們的關係代名詞方面的格而決定, 至於這兩字的前述詞方面是沒有關係的。

§ 29. 誤用 That, which, who, whom 以代 as

誤: There are no such writers  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} whom \\ that \end{array} \right\}$  you have just mentioned.

正: There are no such writers as you have just mentioned.

譯：像你剛提起過的作家是沒有的。

誤：He was not such a man *who* would tell a lie.

正：He was not such a man *as* would tell a lie.

譯：他不是一個會說謊話的人。

誤：This is not such a good book  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{which} \\ \textit{that} \end{array} \right\}$  I expected.

正：This is not such a good book *as* I expected.

譯：這不是一本像我所希望的好書。

【講解】倘前述詞前有 *such*，後面的關係代名詞不應  
用 *that*, *which*, *who*, *whom* 而應用 *as*。

### § 30. it

誤：*It* is no doubt that he will come.

正：There is no doubt he will come.

譯：他會來，這是無疑的。

【講解】*It* 不能用以代 *there* 作冒頭詞 (introduction word)。上面的 *It is no doubt* 完全是由中語直譯英語所致。不過我們只可說 *It is no wonder* 卻不可說 *there is no wonder*。

### 練習 (6)

把下面錯用的代名詞改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. There are no such books which I want.

2. Whoever you elect must be a Chinese.

3. This prize is awarded to whomever writes the best English essay.
4. It is no need to get excited.
5. He is not such a man whom I admire.
6. I never saw such things that you have described.
7. It is no wonder that he should have succeeded.
8. Whoever the gods love die young.
9. Whoever comes is welcome.
10. He stopped whomever looked at him.

## V. 關於形容詞的比較的錯誤

### § 31. more 與比較級 (comparative degree)

誤: You are *more kinder* than your father.

正: You are *kinder* than your father.

正: You are *much kinder* than your father.

譯: 你比你的父親和善(得多)。

【講解】 *kinder* 已是比較級，如再用 *more* 在前面，是重複而錯誤的。犯這種錯誤的人或者有「和善得多」的原意也說不定，這樣就把 *more* 改爲 *much* 就對了。



### § 32. superior, inferior 與比較級

誤： He is *more superior than* his brother in everything.

正： He is *superior to* his brother in everything.

譯： 他每事優於他的兄弟。

誤： It is *more inferior than* what I expected.

正： It is *inferior to* what I expected.

譯： 它比我所期望的較劣。

【講解】 superior 與 inferior 兩字原為拉丁字，它們本來有比較的意義在裏面，故在它們前面再用 more 是重複而錯誤的。在它們後面習慣上用 to 而不用 than. 與 superior, inferior 等類似的字有 prior, senior, junior 等。

### § 33. 比較的事物

誤： The *language* of this book is easier to read than that *book*.

正： The *language* of this book is easier to read than *that* of that book.

譯： 這本書的文字比那本書的文字容易讀。

誤： *You: English* is better than *I*.

正： *Your English* is better than *mine*.

譯： 你的英語比我的英語好。

【講解】照原來的句子，language 與 book 相比，English 則與 I 相比，那是極不合理的。這種錯誤完全是由華語直譯英語所致。第一句的華語原是「這本書的文字比那本書容易讀」；第二句的華語原是「你的英語比我好」。這種華語，如用西洋的文字眼光來看，當然也不合理的；但在國人的日常談話中，這種話確甚普遍，因而直譯為英語，就造成了英語上的錯誤。在第一句中，應該 language 與 language 比（改正句中的 that 就是 language 的代名詞）；在第二句中，應該 English 與 English 比（改正句中的 mine 就是 my English）。

#### § 34. 與什麼比？

誤： Besides these books I have *more* beautiful pictures.

正： Besides these books, I have beautiful pictures.

譯： 除這些書外，我還有美麗的圖畫。

【講解】上面 *more beautiful pictures* 中 *more beautiful* 是比較級，但所說畫與什麼比呢？同自己別的畫比麼？同對話人的畫比麼？看了上面的句子誰也不能回答。因此在一句句子里用比較級時，必須把比的東西說出來，不然就不應用比較級。不過在一段文章中，當然在同一句句子里，有時可不必把所比的東西完全說出來，因為讀了上下文就可知道，例如：— Mr. Chang is the chief secretary. He receives three hundred dollars a

month. I am his assistant, receiving a much smaller pay.

§ 35. 本身與本身比麼?

誤: He is better than *any* boy in the class.

正: He is better than *any other* boy in the class

譯: 他比級中任何其他的孩子來得好。

【講解】 he 是級中的一個；如果說 any boy in the class, 那末 he 也包括在內了。照上面的句子看來,不是 he 與自己也比起來了麼? 不是說「自己比自己也好」麼? 說「自己比自己好」當然是不合理的, 所以 any boy in the class 必須改爲 any other boy in the class, 因爲既說「任何別的孩子」, he 自己就不包含在內了。

練習 (7)

把下面關於比較的錯誤改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. He is more inferior than me.
2. The weather in summer is more disagreeable than winter.
3. Winter is colder than any season.
4. You have books, but I have more money.
5. She is more older than your cousin.
6. The Yangtze is longer than any river in China.

7. You are superior than him in learning.
8. I am more stronger than my brother.
9. He is not only diligent but also more honest.
10. This is more inferior than that in importance.

## 第三章 關於形容詞的錯誤

### I. 容易誤用爲其他詞類的形容詞

#### § 36. 語尾有 ly 的形容詞：—

誤： She spoke *lovely*.

正： She spoke *in a lovely manner*.

譯： 她說話和愛。

【講解】 有幾個形容詞的語尾是 ly，一般學生有把它們當作副詞 (adverb) 用的。最易被他們錯用的就是 lovely, lonely (副詞是 alone), manly 幾個字。

#### § 37. 像是動詞 (verb) 的形容詞：—

誤： I *do not afraid* punishment.

正： I *am not afraid of* punishment.

譯： 我不怕被責。

【講解】 有幾個形容詞常被誤作動詞，原因是它們譯作華語時，頗似動詞，例如上面的 afraid 譯爲華語就是「怕」，「怕」是一個動詞，因而把 afraid 也當動詞用了。除了 afraid 被誤用外，還有 ready (預備), fond (喜愛), tired (疲乏) 等形容詞。至於這幾個字的用法可分述如下：—

afraid——它前面應用 verb to be (即 is, am, was) 等字。它的後面如果是名詞或與名詞相當的字，那末中間應該有個 of。它後面可用不定詞 (infinitive) 或以 that 引起的子句。例：I am afraid of dying, I am afraid of him, He is afraid to die, He is afraid that he will die.

ready——前面應用 verb to be 或 get, 後面可接不定詞。例：Are you ready? I get ready, I am ready to leave.

fond——前面應有 verb to be, 後面接用 of, 例如：He is fond of books, He is fond of motoring.

tired——前面應有 verb to be, 或 get, become 等繫動詞 (linking verb), 後面接用 of 或 with. 接用 of 時 tired 有「對…厭倦」之意；接用 with 時，它有「因…而疲乏」的意思。例：I am tired of this book (我對此書厭倦), I am tired with writing all day (我因終日寫作而厭倦)。

### 練習 (8)

A. 把下面誤用的形容詞改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. I tired of my work.
2. He entered the Church lonely at night.
3. She acted lovely.
4. I afraid of the dog.

5. Do you fond the book?

6. She ready to start.

B. 用下面的形容詞造句子：—

ready, afraid, tired, lovely.

## II. 關於冠詞 (Articles) 的錯誤

### § 38. a, an 與後面的音

誤： He is *a* honest man.

正： He is *an* honest man.

譯： 他是一個誠實的人。

誤： This is *an* university.

正： This is *a* university.

譯： 這是一個大學校。

【講解】 照上面的錯誤看來，犯者在應用 *a* 的地方用了 *an*，在應用 *an* 的地方卻用了 *a*。這兩個錯誤完全出於同一原因，就是犯者誤以為 *an* 用於 vowel letter (母音字，即 *a, o, i, o, u*)，*a* 用於 consonant letter (子音字，除 *a, e, i, o, u* 以外的字母都是)。其實 *a* 與 *an* 之選用是以後面的音為主，而不以字母為主；就是說，*a* 用在子音 (consonant sound) 前面，*an* 用在母音 (vowel sound) 前面。*honest* 的首字母雖為子音字母，但它的首音卻是一

個母音，故前面應用 *an*。 *university* 的首字母雖是一個母音字母，但它的首音卻是一個子音，故應用 *a*。

### § 39. a (an) 與 such

誤： Do you like *a such* book?

正： Do you like *such a* book?

譯： 你喜歡這樣一本書麼？

【講解】 照普通的規則 *a (an)* 總是在於形容詞的前面的，如 *a good book, a beautiful girl*。 犯者以為 *such* 既是形容詞，*a* 就應該放在它的前面。其實在習慣上 *a* 總是在於 *such* 的後面的。

### § 40. a (an) 與別的數字

誤： He has *a* pen, but I have *three* pens.

正： He has *one* pen, but I have *three* pens.

譯： 他有一枝筆，但我有三枝筆。

【講解】 *a* 雖可作「一個」解，但不能與別的數字對比而用。不過，*an hour or two, a day or two* 等是例外的。

### § 41. 冠詞與習用語

誤： He fell sick *at the school*.

正： He fell sick *at school*.

譯： 他病在校中。



誤： He went *by a car*.

正： He went *by car*.

譯： 他坐車去的。

誤： He was put *into a (the) prison*.

正： He was put *into prison*.

譯： 他被禁於獄。

【講解】 在許多習用的片語中是沒有冠詞的，如把冠詞插進去就不合習慣用法。上面 *at school*, *by car*, *put into (in) prison* 等都是很普通的習用語，在它們表面都不應有 *a* 或 *the*，但國人中常把冠詞用進去，就是英語有根底的人有時也難免。這種錯誤的原因也許是在於犯者對文法太偏重而對習慣用語忽略所致。現在把幾個常用而無冠詞的習用語寫在下面：*go to school*, *go to bed*, *go to church*, *by train*, *on foot*, *at home*, *out of doors*, *at dinner*.

### 練習 (9)

把下面關於冠詞的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. Have you ever seen a such picture?
2. I have a pen, two pencils, and four books.
3. I came by a train.
4. He is an European.
5. He will be sent to the prison.
6. He waited a hour or two.

7. He will wear full dress at dinner this evening.
8. It will take a month or two to finish this.
9. I have not seen him since we were at the school together.
10. I never saw a such fine sight.

§ 42. 冠詞與補語名詞 (complement noun)

誤: He was crowned *a king*.

正: He was crowned *king*.

譯: 他被封爲王。

誤: They elected him *the president*.

正: They elected him *president*.

譯: 他們舉他做大總統。

【講解】 在上面這一類句子中的補語名詞如果是表示職位的，它們前面不應有冠詞。

§ 43. the 與最高級形容詞

誤: They are all tall, but Chang is *tallest*.

正: They are all tall, but Chang is *the tallest*.

譯: 他們都長，但張最長。

【講解】 名詞前有最高級形容詞時，應在形容詞前加 *the*。如果已經有了 *my, your, his* 等其他限制語時，這個 *the* 就可不必加，例如: *my hardest day*。

§ 44. the 與表序數的字

誤： He left here on *third* of march.

正： He left here on *the third* of march.

譯： 他在三月三日離開此地。

【講解】 表序數的字前加 the.

§ 45. the 與專有名詞 (proper nouns)

誤： *Yellow River* is one of the longest rivers of China.

正： *The Yellow River* is one of the longest rivers of China.

譯： 黃河是中國最長的江河中之一。

誤： He is studying in *University of Shanghai*.

正： He is studying in *the University of Shanghai*.

譯： 他在滬江大學讀書。

誤： I visited *West Lake* last year.

正： I visited *the West Lake* last year.

譯： 去年我遊西湖。

誤： *China Critic* is a weekly.

正： *The China Critic* is a weekly.

譯： 中國評論週報是星期刊物。

【講解】 一般地說，專有名詞前是不加 the 的，但亦有例外。如上面的 Yellow River 是河名，University of

Shanghai 是附有片語的專有名詞，West Lake 是名詞前附加形容字 (adjectival word) 而成的專名，China Critic 是書報名；在它們面前都應加 the。此外還有下面幾種專有名詞的前面也應該加 the：洋 (the Pacific Ocean)，海 (the Yellow Sea)，港灣 (the Gulf of Mexico)，運河 (the Grand Canal)，山脈 (the Alps)，羣島 (the Chusan Islands)，半島 (the Shantung peninsula)，經典古籍的名字 (the Bible)，會社 (the Y. M. C. A.)，機關 (the Legislative Yuan)。

這裏要特別注意的就是多數的大學，學院，學校前面是不加 the 的。University of the Shanghai 前面加 the 並不是因為它是學校，而是因為它有 of Shanghai 這個片語，Central University 前面加 the 是因為它是名詞前附加形容字而成的專名。

又湖名前照例不加 the，West Lake 前之所以加 the 是因為它是名詞前附加形容字而成的專名。

#### § 46. the 與語言的名稱

誤：He is learned in *Greek language*.

正：He is learned in *the Greek language*.

譯：他精通希臘文。

【講解】語言的名稱前照例不加 the，例如 He is teaching me English；但它的後面有 language 一字時則須在前面加 the。上面的錯誤是由犯者呆板地應用一般的規則而忽略例外的用法所致。

## 練習 (10)

把下面關於冠詞的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. The Yenching University (燕京大學) is a Christian institution (基督教學校).
2. North-China Daily News (字林西報) is a British paper.
3. He is best student in our class.
4. The directors appointed him the general manager (董事任他爲總經理).
5. Lake Tsao (巢湖) is in Anhwei (安徽).
6. He arrived here on fifth instant (本月五日).
7. Pearl River (珠江) is one of the three longest rivers in China.
8. How can we master English language?
9. The Lake Poyang (鄱陽湖) is in Province of Kiangsi (江西省).
10. He was elected a secretary (書記).
11. Is it easy to read Analects of Confucius (論語)?
12. He is the President of Examination Yuan.
13. Who is the President of United States?
14. English is not very difficult to learn.
15. Did you go to the bed early last night?

§ 47. cheap

誤： The price is *cheap*.

正： The price is *low*.

譯： 價錢低。

【講解】 *cheap* 一字不能與 *price* 連用。上面的 This price is *cheap*. 完全是中文式的英語。我們只能說 Things are *cheap*, The price is *low*.

§ 48. dear

誤： The price is *dear*.

正： The price is *high*.

譯： 價錢高。

【講解】 *dear* 是 *cheap* 的反義字，它也不能與 *price* 連用。我們也只能說 Things are *dear*, The price is *high*.

§ 49. some

誤： The bottle does not contain *some* milk.

正： The bottle does not contain *any* milk.

譯： 這瓶沒有一些牛乳。

【講解】 *some* 當數量形容詞(quantitative adjective)用時，只用於肯定句中。

§ 50. any

誤： Have you any money of your own? Yes, I have *any* money of my own.

正： Have you any money of your own? Yes, I have *some* money of my own.

譯： 你有自己的錢麼？是，我有自己的錢。

【講解】 *any* 當數量形容詞時，只用在否定句 (negative sentences) 中，一般人在說話時最易把 *any* 代 *some* 而用在肯定句中。據作者所知，這種錯誤常發生於回答一句有 *any* 的問題時，因為答者在不知不覺中受了問題中 *any* 的影響之後，就在答語中也把它用起來了。

*any* 與 *some* 都可在問題中用，但用 *any* 比較來得普通，而且文法學者大都主張以用 *any* 為佳。

§ 51. another

誤： Please let me see *your another* book.

正： Please let me see *your other* book.

正： please let me see *another of your* books.

譯： 請讓我看看你的另外一本書。

誤： I injured one hand and then *another*.

正： I injured one hand and then *the other*.

譯： 我傷了一隻手，後來又傷了另一隻手。

【講解】 another 是 an 與 other 組成的字，所以不能在它前面再用 an, the, my, that 這一類的字，又它不能用以代替 the other 以指兩者中的一個。

§ 52. whole

誤： The *whole part* of the library was destroyed.

正： The *whole library* was destroyed.

譯： 整個圖書館被毀。

【講解】 part 是一部，whole 是整個，這兩個矛盾的字不能用在一起。上面 whole part 的錯誤完全是由於把華語「全部」直譯所致。

§ 53. uneasy

誤： It is an *uneasy* task.

正： It is *not an easy* task.

正： It is a *difficult* task.

譯： 這是一件不容易的事。

【講解】 uneasy 是「心不安」的意思，不能作「不容易」解。誤用這字的人以為“un”是「不」的意思，easy 是「容易」的意思，所以誤認由這兩部合成的 uneasy 作「不容易」的解釋，而把它誤用。

§ 54. possible

誤： I am *impossible* (*possible*) to do this.

正： It is *impossible* (*possible*) for me to do this.



正： I am *unable* (*able*) to do this.

正： I *cannot* (*can*) do this.

譯： 我不能（能）做這事。

【講解】 possible 不能代 able 用，impossible 也不能代 unable 用。I am possible, you are impossible, they are impossible 等是不通的。這兩字用於下列這種句子中： It is impossible for me to go. This mountain is impossible to climb. To finish this in a short time is possible. It is a plan possible of execution (它是能實行的計劃)。

### § 55. wonderful

誤： They were *wonderful* to hear him confess.

正： They were *surprised* to hear him confess.

譯： 他們聽他招認覺得驚奇。

【講解】 wonderful 作「驚人的」解，如 His patience is wonderful (他的耐性是可驚的)。它不能作「驚愕」解，例如： I am surprised of his patience (我對他的耐性驚奇)。

### § 56. polite

誤： Don't be *polite*.

正： Be at home, Help yourself, Don't mention it, You are welcome.

譯： 請弗客氣（見下面講解）。

【講解】 polite 是「文雅有禮」的意思，對人文雅有禮就是客氣，但我國所說的「客氣」還有別的意思。我們請人隨便弗拘束，請人隨便喫，請人不必說謝語，我們都說「請弗客氣」。但把「請弗客氣」譯作 Don't be polite 不是叫人不要文雅有禮麼？那不是笑話麼？所以請人隨便弗拘束時，我們該說 Be at home; 請人隨便喫時，我們該說 Help yourself; 人家對我們說 Thank you 時，我們該說 Don't mention it 或 you are welcome, 或單說 welcome.

### 練習 (11)

把前面幾節中講過的適當的形容詞或別的字填在下面的空白處：—

1. He told me a — story.
2. I did not see — students in the room.
3. Things are — in the height of the season  
(各物在當令時很—).
4. You should be — towards everybody.
5. This is only one — of the story.
6. I feel — about my friend's health.
7. It is — for me to answer such a question.
8. They were — at hearing him say so.
9. Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I am sorry to be — to come.
11. Shut your — eye.

12. I stayed there three — days.
13. Is there any water in the bottle? Yes, there is — water in the bottle.
14. Could you tell me whether the price of this watch is — or —?
15. It cost me only three dollars. It is very—.
16. — city has been captured.
17. The question is — to answer.
18. Here are some cakes. —.
19. Nothing is — for her, who is so poor and weak.
20. I injured one finger and then—.

## 第四章 關於動詞的錯誤

### I. 關於動詞的主要部份的錯誤

§ 57. 不規則動詞 (irregular verbs) 的過去時態 (past tense) 與現在時態 (present tense):—

誤: You *drove* past our school every morning.

正: You *drive* past our school every morning.

譯: 你每天駛過我們的學校。

【講解】 *drove* 是 *drive* 的過去時態，不能當現在時態用。學生中常有把不規則動詞的過去時態誤當現在時態用，原因在於沒有把三個主要部份熟記熟用。最容易弄錯的是下面幾個動詞，初學者須特別注意：—

現在	過去	現在	過去
choose	chose	shoot	shot
hide	hid	fall	fell
lose	lost	build	built
write	wrote	send	sent
break	broke	spend	spent
ride	rode	bid	bit
rise	rose	drive	drove

§ 58. 不規則動詞的過去時態與不定詞 (infinitives):—

誤： He will *wrote* a letter to his father.

正： He will *write* a letter to his father.

譯： 他將寫一封信給他的父親。

【講解】 把不規則動詞的過去時態誤當現在時態用的人，必定也把它們誤當不定詞用，因為不定詞的形式是與現在時態一樣的，所不同的只在於第三人稱單數動詞後面另加一個“s”。所以犯上面錯誤的人，對於 § 57 中的幾個不規則動詞應加同樣的注意。

### § 59. 不規則動詞與語尾“ed”：—

誤： He *drawed* it by force.

正： He *drew* it by force.

譯： 他用力拉它。

誤： They were *drived* out.

正： They were *driven* out.

譯： 他們被趕出。

【講解】 規則動詞 (regular verb) 由現在時態變為過去時態或過去分詞 (past participle) 時，後面加 ed 或 d。draw 與 drive 都是不規則動詞，變為過去時態或過去分詞時絕不能加 ed 或 d，因為它們另有過去時態與過去分詞的字。初學者把不規則動詞當作規則動詞，完全是由於沒有把不規則動詞的主要部份熟記所致。下面這幾個不規則動詞，初學者常易誤作規則動詞，他們須特別注意：—

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	誤
cost	cost	cost	costed
draw	drow	drawn	drawed
freeze	froze	frozen	freezed
hurt	hurt	hurt	hurted
leave	left	left	leaved
seek	sought	sought	sooked
shut	shut	shut	{shutted shuted
steal	stole	stolen	stealed
spread	spread	spread	sproaded

現在把常用的不規則動詞的主要部份，列在下面，望讀者熟記。(在 § 59 中有過的，不重列)

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awaked, awoke
beat	beat	beaten, beat
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken

bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt, burned	burnt, burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flow	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
got	got	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grow	grown
hang	{ hung { hanged	{ hung { hanged
have	had	had

hide	hid	hidden, hid
hit	hit	hit
hold	hold	held
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown, showed (極少用)
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat



sleep	slept	slopt
smel(	smelt, smelled (極少用)	smolt, smelled (極少用)
stand	stood	stood
strike	struck	struck
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke, waked	waked, woken, woke
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

### § 60. 不規則動詞的過去時態與過去分詞：一

誤： He has *took* my book.

正： He has *taken* my book.

譯： 他已把我的書拿去。

誤： She *sung* her cheerful song.

正： She *sang* her cheerful song.

譯： 她唱她的愉快的歌。

【講解】 在 He has *took* my book 中，犯者把過去時態誤作過去分詞用；在 She *sung* her cheerful song

中，犯者把過去分詞誤作過去時態用。這兩種錯誤在初學者中間極通常，原因仍是他們未曾把不規則動詞的主要部分熟記。

### 練習 (12)

下面動詞的主要部份，倘有錯誤，把它們改正：

1. Does he hid in the bushes?
2. I have made some mistakes. They will lost me many marks.
3. They begun their work in morning.
4. I have wrote several letters to my father.
5. She shutted the door.
6. He spends his time in reading.
7. He is fond of shooting.
8. You may chose whatever you please.
9. He was freezed to death.
10. It costed me three dollars.
11. Last night he drunk six bottles of wine.
12. They have rode ten miles.
13. I asked him not to broke his promise.
14. He has rose to the head of his class.
15. He lied all night on his sleepless pillow.

## II. 關於動詞的一致 (agreement) 的錯誤

### § 61. Do, does 與主詞 (subject):—

誤: *He don't like you.*

正: *He doesn't like you.*

譯: 他不喜歡你。

【講解】 do 與 I, you, we, they 及多數名詞連用, does 則與 he, she, it 及單數名詞連用。上面的錯誤常在會話中發現, 因為犯者說 don't 比說 doesn't 來得順口。至於在寫作時, 他們也許知道應該說 He does not, 不應該說 He do not.

### § 62. All 與述部動詞 (predicate verb):—

誤: *All of my money have been lost.*

正: *All of my money has been lost.*

譯: 我所有的錢都已遺失。

【講解】 All 用在指不能數的東西時, 它的述部動詞應該是單數。money (錢) 是一個攏統的名稱, 不能數; all 既指 (所有的錢) 當然也不能數, 故述部動詞 have 應改為單數的 has (讀者須注意的就是 money 雖不能數, dollars, cents, pounds 等是可數的)。又 All 用在指可數的東西時, 它的述部動詞應該是複數, 例如 All of them have come.

§ 63. 述部動詞與有 with, together with, as well as  
等連接的主詞：一

誤： Your letter together with the book *have* just reached me.

正： Your letter together with the book *has* just reached me.

譯： 你的信以及書我剛剛收到。

誤： The general as well as his soldiers *have* fled into the forest.

正： The general as well as his soldiers *has* fled into the forest.

譯： 這將領以及他的兵士已逃至樹林中去。

【講解】 主詞有 with, together with, as well as, in addition to, 等連接詞連用時，該主詞的數不受它們的影響，因而述部動詞的數也應該仍與該主詞一致而不受影響。第一句中的主詞是 letter，它是單數，故其動詞也應該是單數。第二句中的主詞是 general，它也是單數，故其動詞也應該是單數。

§ 64. Either, neither 與述部動詞：一

誤： Either *have* their diadvantages

正： Either *has* its disadvantages.

譯： 兩者各有其弊。

誤： Neither of my friends *speak* English.

正： Neither of my friends *speaks* English.

譯： 吾友俱不擅英語。

【講解】 Either 與 neither 作代名詞時總是單數，所以它們的動詞也總是單數。

§ 65. Either...or, neither...nor 與述部動詞：—

誤： Either Wang or Chang *are* to blame.

正： Either Wang or Chang *is* to blame.

譯： 不是王該受責就是張該受責。

誤： Neither the father nor the son *have* come

正： Neither the father nor the son *has* come.

譯： 父沒有來，子也沒有來。

【講解】 上面的錯誤是由犯者誤認主詞爲複合主詞 (Compound subject) 所致。實則述部動詞的數是以 or 或 nor 後面的代名詞或名詞爲斷的。第一句 or 後面的 Chang 和第二句 nor 後面的 son 都是單數，所以述部動詞也應該單數。

§ 66. 複數主詞 (plural subject) 與述部動詞：—

誤： Two weeks *are* too short a time to prepare it.

正： Two weeks *is* too short a time to prepare it.

譯： 兩星期預備它，時間太短。

【講解】照一般的規則，如果主詞是複數，它的述部動詞也是複數。但表示單個觀念 (singular idea) 的複數主詞的動詞應該是單數。上面的 Two weeks 雖是複數，但所表示的是一個單個觀念，故複數的 are 應該改為單數的 is。

## 練習 (13)

把下面句子中括弧內的適當動詞填在空格處：—

1. Four miles — (is, are) a good walk.
2. Neither my brother nor my sister — (is, are) at home.
3. The captain, as well as his men, — (is, are) unwilling to fight.
4. Either you or I — (are, am) wrong.
5. Neither of them — (are, is) honest.
6. All of his grey hair — (has been, have been) cut off.
7. He — (does not, do not) speak French.
8. Either of you — (are, is) right.
9. The house, together with the furnishings — (was sold, were sold).
10. Three fourths of the earth's surface — (consist, consists) of water.
11. A hundred dollars a month — (are, is) a moderate income.

12. She —— (don't, doesn't) care.  
 13. All the people —— (was, were) frightened.  
 14. Neither the general nor his soldiers ——  
 (are, is) to blame.  
 15. The teacher as well as the students ——  
 (has, have) gone to the laboratory.

### III. 關於動詞的時態 (Tense) 的錯誤

#### § 67. 表示過去的用語與現在完成時態 (present perfect tense):—

誤: I *have come* back to school *yesterday*.

正: I *came* back to school *yesterday*.

譯: 我於昨日回校。

誤: His father *has died* *two years ago*.

正: His father *died* *two years ago*.

譯: 他的父親兩年前死去。

【講解】句中如果有表示過去時間的副詞 (adverb) 或副詞片語 (adverbial phrase) 時，應該用過去時態 (past tense)，不應用現在完成時態。現在完成時態是表示一件事在現在已完成，至於這事在何時發生則不問。例如: I *have come* back to school 這句話是對的，它的意思就是「我現在已經回校」，至於「回校」這件事的發生也許在早晨，也許在昨日，也許在兩星期前。但說的人如果

把發生的時日說出。那末他就應該說 *I came back to school yesterday* 或 *I came back to school two weeks ago*, 或 *I cam back to school this morning*. 上面兩句句子的錯誤是直譯中文「我已經於昨日回校」, 「他的父親已經於兩年前過世」所致。在這二句中的「已經」兩字常被一般學習英語的人用現在完成時態來表示。

§ 68. 現在時態 (present tense) 與未來時態 (future tense):—

誤: *I shall go home when you will come.*

正: *I shall go home when you come.*

譯: 你來時我將回家。

【講解】未來時態 (future tense) 雖表示未來時, 但副詞子句 (adverbial clause) 中的未來時卻用單純的現在時態來表示, 所以上面的 *will come* 應該改為 *come*.

§ 69. 過去完成時態 (past perfect tense) 與現在完成時態 (present perfect tense):—

誤: *He left after I have written the letter.*

正: *He left after I had written the letter.*

譯: 我寫好這信後他離去。

【講解】現在完成時態是表示一件事現在已完成。如果一件事是在過去另一件事以前完成, 就應用過去完成時態, 不能用現在完成時態。上句中 *left* 所表示的是過去



的一件事，信是在 *left* 以前寫好的，故應說 *had written*，不應說 *have written*。

### § 70. 另一過去時間與過去完成時態：一

誤： *He had gone.*

正： *He has gone.*

譯： 他已去了。

正： *He had gone when I came.*

譯： 我來時他已去了。

【講解】 在上節已經說過，過去完成時態是表示一件事在另一件過去的事以前完成。在上面的 *He had gone* 中既沒有另一件過去的事，當然不能用過去完成時態。不過有時即使句中沒有提起另一過去的事，過去完成時態也可用，但這過去的事必須在上下文指出；例如：

*I was very hungry. I had eaten nothing all day.*  
在第二句中並無另一過去的事，但它在上一句已指示出來。

### § 71. 過去進行時態 (past progressive tense) 與另一過去時間：一

誤： *I was reading a letter.*

正： *I read a letter.*

譯： 我讀一封信。

正： *I was reading a letter at that time.*

譯： 我在那時讀一封信。

正： I was reading a letter when he came.

譯： 當他來時我正在讀一封信。

【講解】 過去進行時態表示在某過去時中進行的事，它必須與另一過去時間或過去時態的動詞並用。如果我們不過提及一件過去的動作，我們只須用單純過去時態 (simple past tense)。不過有時即使句中沒有指出過去時間或另一過去的事，我們也可以用過去進行時態，但這過去時間或另一過去的事必須在上下文指出；例如： He came about noon, I was reading a letter. 在第二句中並沒有過去的時間或另一過去的事指出，但過去的事已在上句指示出來。

### 練習 (14)

把下面時態的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. I shall not start if it will rain.
2. The new general has arrived two days ago.
3. I got to the station after the train has started.
4. He had not arrived yet.
5. I have read this book when I was a child.
6. They were talking noisily
7. We must wait till he will come.
8. I was writing a letter to my sister.
9. The boys had left the school.

10. The road was muddy. It had rained during the night.

### 練習 (15)

寫五句有過去完成時態 (past perfect tense) 動詞的句子。

### 練習 (16)

寫五句有過去進行時態 (past progressive tense) 動詞的句子。

## § 72. since 與時態：一

誤：It *was* very hot *since* my arrival.

正：It *has been* very hot *since* my arrival.

譯：我到後天氣很熱。

誤：He *is* not there *since* his father *has died*.

正：He *has not been* there *since* his father *died*.

譯：他的父親死後，他不在那邊了。

誤：He *was* sick *since* I saw him last.

正：He *has been* sick *since* I saw him last.

譯：我前次看見他以後他病了。

【講解】 since 作「以後」解，這「以後」是從過去的一個時間一直到現在止。當它作介系詞用時，動詞通常是現在完成時態。在第一句中的 since 就是介系詞，動詞用單

純過去時態的 *was* 是錯誤的，故應改正為 *has been*。當它作連接詞用時（第二與第三句中的 *since* 就是連接詞），在主要子句（*principal clause*）中的動詞通常是現在完成時態，在 *since* 起首的子句中的動詞應該是單純過去時態。

不過在習慣上我們常說 *It is a week (two weeks, three days, four months, a year, etc). since my arrival (或 since I arrived)*。在這種句中不用現在完成時態的 *has been* 而用單純現在時態的 *is*，原因是所稱的時日事實上在說這種話的時候才實足，所謂 *a week*，在說話以前始終不足 *a week*，說話前既不足 *a week*，那末用現在完成時態倒反有點不合理。

又 *since* 作「既然」解時，它與時態是沒有關係的，故在主要子句與用 *since* 起首的子句中，任何時態都可用，只須與其他時態的規則符合就行。

### § 73. 時態與間接敘述 (indirect narration)：—

誤：He told me that he *will come* to see me.

正：He told me that he *would come* to see me.

譯：他告訴我說他將來看我。

誤：He told me that his father *has been sick*.

正：He told me that his father *had been sick*.

譯：他告訴我說他的父親患了病。

【講解】按照時態連貫 (*sequence of tense*) 的規則，主要子句的動詞如果是過去時態，則從屬子句 (*dependent*)

clause) 中的動詞 (用 than 或 as 起首的從屬子句除外) 也應該用過去時態, 那就是說從屬子句中的動詞不能用現在時態 (普遍的事實——universal truth 除外), 現在完成時態或 shall 與 will. 在有間接敘述的句子中, 那開端子句 (introductory clause——如 He said, He told, He asked 等) 就是主要子句, 那間接敘述句就是從屬子句。上面第一句是由 He said to me, "I will come to see you." 而來, 犯者由直接敘述改爲間接敘述時是仍照原來的時態敘述的。第二句是由 He said to me, "My father has been sick." 而來, 犯者由直接敘述改爲間接敘述時也是照原來的時態敘述的 (參照 § 69)。

總之開端子句中的動詞是單純過去時態或過去完成時態, 則間接敘述中的動詞, 應依照時態連貫的規則, 就是:

直接敘述中的動詞	改爲間接敘述時
present 應改爲	past
present perfect 應改爲	past perfect
past 應改爲	past perfect
shall 應改爲	should
will 應改爲	would
can 應改爲	could
may 應改爲	might

### 練習 (17)

把下面時態的錯誤改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. Her husband is dead since last Thursday.
2. He said that he will do it.

3. The teacher told the student that the principal has been in the wrong.
4. He informed me that his brother has arrived.
5. It is three years since I have begun to learn English.
6. Since you are ill, I will go alone.
7. He asked me why I have struck his dog.
8. Charles told to his brother Jack may not come.
9. We reside in Shanghai since we have left our native town.
10. This has been the tenth day since I wrote to him.

## 練習 (18)

把下列各句改爲間接敘述：--

1. He said to me, "I will follow your advice"  
(He told me that. . . .)
2. The teacher said to us, "The earth is round."  
(The teacher told us that. . . .)
3. He said to me, "I have received your letter."  
(He told me that. . . .)
4. He said, "I hope it will not rain."  
(He hoped that. . . .)

5. He asked me, "Can you speak English?"  
(He asked me whether. . .)

## IV. 條件句中的時態及其他

### § 74. 條件句 (conditional sentence) 與時態：一

誤：He did not study hard, and therefore he failed in the examination. If he *studied* hard, he *would not failed*.

正：He did not study hard, and therefore he failed in the examination. If he *had studied* hard, he *would not have failed*.

譯：他不用功讀書，所以考試失敗，倘使他曾用功讀書，他就不致失敗了。

【講解】 如果在條件句子中的事實完全出於假想而非確實並且是指過去的，那末條件子句 (conditional clause) 中的動詞應該用過去完成時態，不能用過去時態，同時主要子句即結論子句 (conclusional clause) 中的動詞應該是 *should have*, *would have*, *could have*, 或 *might have* + 過去分詞。照上面第一句看來，第二句所表示的過去事實完全出於假想而非確實，故條件子句中不能用過去時態，主要子句中也不能用 *would* + 過去分詞的述部動詞。

§ 75. 條件子句與結論子句的時態連貫：一

誤：If he *had studied* hard, he *would pass* the examination.

正：If he *had studied* hard, he *would have passed* the examination.

譯：倘使他曾用功讀書，他也許考試及格了。（事實上他未曾用功，因而考試不及格）。

【講解】一般初學者對於條件句中的時態往往不能運用自如，故常犯 § 74 之錯誤。至於上面這種錯誤是一般對於英語有了相當根底者常犯的錯誤；他們知道條件子句中表示完全虛擬的過去事實的動詞應該用過去完成時態，但他們對於結論子句中的 *would have passed* 這一類的時態未能熟練地的運用（參見 § 74）。

§ 76. wish 與從屬子句中的動詞時態：一

誤：I wish you *will come*.

正：I wish you *would come*.

譯：我願你會來。（事實上對方是絕不會來的）

誤：I wish you *can speak* English.

正：I wish you *could speak* English.

譯：我願你能講英語。（事實上對方絕不能講英語）

【講解】上面這種錯誤是很普遍的，原因完全在於犯者把 *wish* 與 *hope* 混用。兩字雖同作願望解，但 *wish* 所表示的是不可能的願望，因而 *wish* 後面的子句，其動



詞總是假設法 (subjunctive mood), 它的時態是過去時態 (意義上是現在的) 或過去完成時態 (意義是過去的)。上面第一句中的子句是表示將來的, 但不能用 will 而應該用過去式的 would. 第二句的子句是表示現在的, 但不能用現在時態的 can, 而應該用過去時態的 could. 平常我們以為「願望」總是指示現在或將來, 但事實上它也可以對過去的事而言, 例如 I wish he *had come* yesterday. 這句話的意思是: 他在昨天並沒有來, 如果他來就好了。這裏要注意的就是不可用 came (過去時態) 以代 had come (過去完成時態)。

§ 77. as if 後面的時態:—

誤: The boy talks as if he *is* a girl.

誤: The boy talks as if he *was* a girl.

正: The boy talks as if he *were* girl.

譯: 這孩子說話好似一個女孩。

誤: He looks as if he *sees* a ghost.

正: He looks as if he *saw* a ghost.

譯: 他的面容看起來好像他看見一個鬼。

誤: He looks as if he *has seen* a ghost.

正: He looks as if he *had seen* a ghost.

譯: 他的面容看起來似乎他曾看見過一個鬼。

【講解】 as if 後面所說的事總是虛假而不實的, 所以它後面的動詞也總是假設法 (subjunctive mood), 同時它的時態也必須照假設法用。如果事情是現在的, 那末

就用過去時態；不過 verb to be 的主詞即使是 I, he, she, it 或單數名詞，它的過去時態也必是 were 而非 was。如果事情是過去的，那末就用過去完成時態（有時也用過去時態）。上面第一句 as if 後所表示的是現在的事，故應用假設過去時態 (subjunctive past) 的 were。第二句 as if 後所表示的也是現在的事，故應用假設過去時態的 saw。第三句 as if 後所表示的是過去的事，故應用假設過去完成時態 (subjunctive past perfect) 的 had seen。這裏須特別提出的就是 as if 前面子句中的動詞的時態與它後面的動詞的時態不一定是聯貫的，譬如在上面的第二句與第三句中，as if 前面的 looks 卻是現在時態，而後面的動詞的時態卻不同。

## V. 關於動詞語態的錯誤

### § 78. 被動語態 (passive voice) 與 verb to be:—

誤：He *struck* by me.

正：He *was (is, has been) struck* by me.

譯：他被我打。

【講解】被動語態是由 verb to be (is, am, are, was, were, has been, have been, had been, will be, shall be 等) 加上過去分詞而成。上面的錯誤在初學者中間很普通，原因在於直譯中文。譬如上面這句話的中文是「他被我打」，在它裏面並沒有「是」(即 verb to be) 這個字，因

而譯成英文時就把這個相當於「是」的 verb to be 也不知不覺省去了。

§ 79. 被動語態與不及物動詞 (intransitive verb) 後的介系詞：—

誤：He *is laughed* by his classmates

正：He *is laughed at* by his classmates.

譯：他被同學嘲笑。

誤：The point you spoke of *will be attended*.

正：The point you spoke of *will be attended to*.

譯：你所說的這一點將予以注意。

【講解】不及物動詞照例是沒有被動語態的，不過有些不及物動詞加了介系詞以後就有及物動詞的性質而可以由主動語態 (active voice) 變成被動語態。上面的 laugh 與 attend 是不及物動詞，(這兩字當然也可當及物動詞用，但意義有些不同)，它們各加 at 與 to 以後就與及物動詞相同。初學英語者以及少數對英語有了相當根底的人在把這種動詞用在被動語態時，往往把原有的介系詞省去。例如上面第一句的錯誤初學者常犯，第二句的錯誤就是英語有根底的人也常犯。

§ 80. 形式主動而意義被動的動詞：—

誤：The book *is sold* very well.

正：The book *sells* very well.

譯：這書銷路很好。

誤： This coat *can be worn* well.

正： This coat *wears* well (badly).

譯： 這衣很耐穿（不耐穿）。

【講解】 *sell* 作「銷行」解時是一個不及物動詞，*wear* 有「耐用」的意思時也是一個不及物動詞。這兩個動詞在這種場合時，不可用被動語態，因為它們本來具有被動的意義。與這兩字類似的字並不多，茲將著者所能想得起的寫在下面：—

This sentence *reads* well (這句句子讀起來頗好)。

This fruit does not *carry* well (這水果難以運輸—  
意即途中因其不能久藏而易腐壞)。

This wine *drinks* very well (這酒飲起來味道很好)。

§ 81. feel, smell, taste 與語態：—

誤： Ice *is felt* cold.

正： Ice *feels* cold.

譯： 冰摸着是冷的。

誤： Tho milk *is smelt* sour.

正： The milk *smells* sour.

譯： 這牛奶有酸氣。

誤： Sugar *is tasted* sweet.

正： Sugar *tastes* sweet.

譯： 糖的味道甜。

【講解】 這幾個動詞也含有被動的意義，故與上節的 *sell wear* 等頗相似，所不同者 *smell* 等是不完全不及物

動詞 (incomplete i. transitive verbs), 後面可接形容詞, 不可接副詞; sell 等是完全不及物動詞 (complete intransitive verbs), 後面可接副詞, 不可接形容詞。

### 練習 (19)

把下面關於語態的錯誤改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. I scolded by my father this morning.
2. It can be sold very well.
3. This parcel carries quite easily.
4. Velvet (天鵝絨) is felt smooth.
5. The flower is smelt sweet.
6. The matter will be duly attended.
7. How does this book read?
8. He is being looked by all the bystanders (旁觀者).
9. The letter is read as follows.
10. He wounded by a bullet (子彈).

## VI. 關於助動詞的錯誤

### § 82. verb to be 的濫用:—

誤: This book *is belong* to me.

正: This book *belongs* to me.

譯: 這本書屬於我。

誤: *It was happened yesterday.*

正: *It happened yesterday.*

譯: 這事在昨天發生。

【講解】在任何語態的動詞前加 verb to be 是初學英語者中間最普通的錯誤。這種錯誤並非由於他們主觀地要把動詞變成被動語態，而是由於 is, was, am 等動詞在初學英語時最多用的緣故，或由於中文中常有「是」這個字的緣故（例如第一句也許是由「這本書是屬於我的」譯成，第二句是由「這事是昨天發生」譯成）。Verb to be 作助動詞時除用於進行時態（progressive tense）與被動語態中外，不能用於別の場合。上面的 belong 與 happen 既不是及物動詞，當然不能變成被動語態，因而也不能用 is, was 等字在它們後面。這兩個動詞根本又不是進行時態，is, was 等字當然也不能加在前面。

§ 83. verb to be 不應省而省: 一

誤: *He writing a letter.*

正: *He is writing a letter.*

譯: 他正在寫信。

誤: *It reported by him.*

正: *It was reported by him.*

譯: 這是由他報告的。

【講解】進行時態是由 verb to be 加上現在分詞（present participle）而成，上面第一句的動詞進行時

態，writing 前面的 is (即 verb to be) 是不能省去的。在 § 82 中我們知道初學者常把 is, was 等字不必要地加在任何動詞前面，其原因已在該節解釋。至於在進行時態中應加 is, was 等字而不加，則也許是由於犯者過分注重現在分詞而忽略了 verb to be 所致。第二句的動詞是被動語態，初學者也往往把 verb to be 省去，其原因已在 § 78 中解釋。

#### § 84. 助動詞的前後相應：一

誤： Our team *has* won the game, *isn't* it?

正： Our team *has* won the game *hasn't* it?

譯： 我們的球隊已勝了競賽，它不會麼？

誤： Wang: I *like* it very much.

Chang: So *am* I.

正： Wang: I *like* it very much.

Chang: So *do* I.

譯： 王： 我很喜歡它。

張： 我也這樣（我也很喜歡它）。

【講解】 敘述問句 (assertive question) 中的問句應該用與前面子句中的動詞相符的動詞。如果在前面子句中已經用了助動詞——例如上面的第一句中的 *has*——，那末後面問句應該用同樣的動詞，如果前面子句的動詞沒有助動詞，而那動詞是一個 verb to do, 那末後面問句應該用 *do, does* 或 *did*, 例如：He came yesterday, *didn't* he? 一般學生對於 *isn't* 似乎已經說得很熟，以

致在用 *didn't it*, *won't you*, *hadn't he* 等地方都用 *isn't it* 去代替。這種錯誤的另一個原因恐怕是出於犯者把中文的「是不是」直譯為英文，因為在中文的敘述問句中，我們的確常用「是不是」這句話的，例如：「他昨天來，是不是？」

如果一子句或獨立句是以 *so* 開始而同時這個 *so* 又代表前一子句或獨立句的述部中的意義，那末這以 *so* 開始的子句或獨立句中的助動詞應該與前一子句或獨立句的動詞相符，至於應用何種助動詞，則其原則完全與上述的敘述問句相同。茲舉例如下：

*He has been there, and so have I.*

*They will leave tomorrow, and so will my  
mather.*

Ling: *I shall go right away.* Li: *So shall I.*

*So am I* 這句話一般學生似也說得很熟，因而他們常把它不知不覺地用來代替，*so do I*, *so shall I*, *so can I*, 等類似之語。這種錯誤就是在英文程度頗高的人中間也頗普遍。

§ 85. That, so that, in order that 後的助動詞：一

誤：He works hard, that (so that, in order that) his family *will live* in comfort.

正：He works hard, that (so that, in order that) his family *may live* in comfort.

譯：他辛勤工作為的要使他家庭生活舒適。



【講解】在習慣上我們在以 *that, so, that* 或 *in order that* (意即「爲的是」) 開始的子句中常用 *may* 或 *might*, 不用別的助動詞。

§ 86. shall 與 will:—

誤: I *will be* twenty years old next year.

正: I *shall be* twenty years old next year.

譯: 我明年二十歲。

【講解】*I* 或 *we* 後面用 *shall* 以表示單純的「將來」的意義, 用 *will* 以表示「情願」, 「決意」等意義。一個人的年齡是不能由人情願或決定的, 故說 *I will be twenty years old next year* 是可笑的, 雖然犯者的原意是「我明年將要二十歲」, 不是「我情願(決定)明年二十歲」。

練習 (20)

把下面關於助動詞的錯誤改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. He took medicine, so that he would get well.
2. We will be sick if we do not take care of our health.
3. Li: William went there yesterday. Ho: So am I.
4. Men work, in order that they will earn a living.
5. I am fear him.

6. He is play tennis every day.
7. He reading the North-China Daily News  
(字林西報).
8. He has lost the game, isn't it?
9. You will come to see me, isn't it?
10. This lesson has explained.
11. I am afraid we will lose the game.
12. I am very sorry that he was failed.
13. He looking at you.
14. He studies hard, and so am I.
15. What was happened yesterday?
16. He started early, that he might not be late.

## VII. 關於不定詞(Infinitives)的錯誤

### § 87. 述部動詞後面的不定詞與 to:—

誤: He likes *read* novels.

正: He likes *to read* novels.

譯: 他歡喜讀小說。

【講解】除例外外，述部動詞後面的不定詞前面總有一個 *to* 作它的記號。不過初學英語者對於不定詞根本沒有深刻的印像，他們更不知它的前面應有 *to*，他們只把中文中的動詞直譯就算，例如：「歡喜」是 *like*，「讀」是 *read* 連起來就成了 *like read*。

§ 88. ought 後面的不定詞與 to:—

誤: You ought *come* at four.

正: You ought *to come* at four.

譯: 你應該在四點鐘來。

【講解】 ought 雖然是一個助動詞，但它的後面的助動詞仍應加個 to 在前面。初學者根據助動詞後面的不定詞不應有 to 的規則，就誤認 ought 後面也不應有 to。因而造成上面的錯誤。

§ 89. let, make, see, hear 等動詞後面的不定詞與 to:—

誤: Why did you not let him *to go*?

正: Why did you not let him *go*?

譯: 你爲什麼不讓他去?

誤: He made me *to pay* the money.

正: He made me *pay* the money.

譯: 他使我付錢。

誤: I saw something *to fall*.

正: I saw something *fall*.

譯: 我看見東西落下來。

誤: I heard him *to sing*.

正: I heard him *sing*.

譯: 我聽見他唱歌。

【講解】 let, make (使得) hear, see 後面的不定詞的 to 是應該省去的。此外 have (致使), bid, feel, watch,

need not, dare not, had better, had rather 等後的不定詞的 to 也應省去。help 後面的 to 則省去也可，不省去也可。

§ 90. 不定詞與 not:—

誤: The teacher told him *to not do it*.

正: The teacher told him *not to do it*.

譯: 這教員囑他不要做這事。

【講解】 not 與不定詞連用時，not 應該放在 to 的前面，不應放在該不定詞與 to 的中間。

§ 91. think 與不定詞:—

誤: I think *to go to school*.

正: I think *I will go to school*.

正: I *intend to go to school*.

正: I *am thinking of going to school*.

譯: 我想到學校去。

【講解】 think 表示期望的意思時，它的後面絕不能用不定詞。像上面的 I think to go to school 完全是中文式的英文，它可以用上面幾種別的語法來替代。但意義上與 think 類似的 expect, hope, intend 等動詞後可用不定詞。

think 如作「以爲」解，它的後面用不定詞，例如：  
They thought him *to be* a great man.

§ 92. blame 作不定詞時的語態 (voice):—

誤: You are *to be blamed*.

正: You are *to blame*.

譯: 你該受責。

【講解】blame 在 verb to be 後面作不定詞時，它應用主動語態；不應用被動語態，雖然它的意義是被動的。但我們只說 He deserves *to be blamed*，不能說 He deserves *to blame*。

§ 93. 不定詞與時態:—

誤: You ought *to go* last week.

正: You ought *to have gone* last week.

譯: 上星期你就應該去了。

【講解】不定詞所表示的不論其為過去的或現在的，一般學習英語者總是一概用單純式不定詞 (simple infinitive)。其實如果該不定詞所表示的事實是過去的，它就應該用完成式 (即 “to” have 十過去分詞)。

練習 (21)

把下面關於不定詞的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. I want ask you a question.
2. Don't forget write to me.
3. He ought go now.
4. He made them to obey him.

5. May I ask you to help me answer these questions?
6. You need not answer every question.
7. He had better to stay here.
8. I think to go abroad.
9. Who is to be blamed in this matter?
10. Does he deserve to be blamed?
11. You ought to answer the questions yesterday.
12. Be careful to not take cold.
13. We think him to be guilty.
14. I heard him to say so.
15. I'll have him to do it.

## VIII. 關於分詞 (Participles) 的錯誤

### § 94. 分詞與進行時態 (Progressive Tense):—

誤: I am now write a letter to my parents.

正: I am now writing a letter to my parents.

譯: 我現在正寫一封信給我的雙親。

【講解】進行時態的造成是 verb to be 加上現在分詞 (Present Participle)。上面的錯誤正與 § 83 中所述者相反，就是犯者注意了 verb to be 却忽略了現在分詞。

§ 95. 現在分詞與述部動詞 (Predicate Verb):—

誤: After I *arriving*, he left.

正: After I *arrived*, he left.

正: After *my arrival*, he left (或 He left after *my arrival*.)

譯: 我到後他離開。

正: After I *had arrived*, he left.

譯: 他在我已經到了之後離去。

誤: Before I *giving* my answer, I will ask you some questions.

正: Before I *give* my answer, I will ask you some questions.

正: Before *giving* my answer, I will ask you some questions.

譯: 在我沒有作答以前, 我要問你幾個問題。

【講解】 上面的錯誤與上節 (§ 94) 的錯誤頗相同, 就是犯者卻不知不覺中單以現在分詞作為述部動詞 (單是一個現在分詞是不能作述部動詞的)。不過在心理上, 這兩種錯誤是不同的。上面的錯誤不外由下面兩種原因中的一種所造成: (1) 犯者誤認 *before* 與 *after* 等字為介系詞, 於是就在他們後面用與現在分詞形式相同的動名詞 (Gerund)。(2) 犯者想用分詞片語 (Participial Phrase) 而不會用。

§ 96. 不連結的分詞 (Dangling Participles):—

誤: *Having answered* the first question, the second must now be answered.

正: *Having answered* the first question, *I* must now answer the second.

正: *The first question having been answered*, the second must now be answered.

譯: 回答第一問題之後, 現在第二問題必須回答。

【講解】分詞片語總是形容句中的主詞的, 像上面誤句中的 *Having answered the first question* 照文法上說, 是形容主詞 *question* [此字在 *second* 之後, 不過未寫出 (*understood*)] 但在意義上是不通的, 因為問題怎麼能回答問題呢? 很明顯地, 這句片語是指 *I* 而言, 故原句中的 *the second must now be answered* 可改為 *I must now answer the second*. 如不這樣改, 則可將原來的分詞片語改為獨立句構 (*Absolute Construction*) 就是 *the first question having been answered*.

不連結分詞不但中國學生常犯, 即英美人士亦常犯。

不過下列幾種不連結分詞的用法在習用上是可以的:—

It is excusable, *considering* his age. (就他的年齡而論, 這是可原諒的)。

(有的文法學者認為 *considering* 是一個介系詞)。

*Granting* that to be true, does it answer my argument? (假定那是真情, 它能答復我的論點麼?)



Strictly *speaking*, the subject belongs to rhetoric, not to grammar. (嚴格的說，這題目屬於修辭學，不屬於文法學)。

§ 97. 以 when 或 while 開始的子句與前面的主詞和助動詞省去的分詞：一

誤： While *eating* our dinner, the sky cleared up.

正： While *we were eating* our dinner, the sky cleared up.

譯： 當我們吃飯的時候天晴了。

【講解】 以 when 或 while 開始的子句，如果它的主詞是與子句主句的主詞是同一的，那末該主詞與述部動詞中的分詞前面的助動詞是可省去的，例如：When going (= When *I was going*) to Nanking, I had my gold watch stolen. 如果兩子句中的主詞不是同一的，以 when 或 while 開始的子句就不能把主詞與分詞前面的助動詞省去。上面 while eating our dinner 中的實際主詞是 we，而主要的子句中的主詞是 sky，兩者既非同一，we 與 are 兩字就不能省去。

練習 (22)

把下面關於分詞的錯誤改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. What is he read?
2. After the teacher leaving, they all went to play.

3. When we arriving there it was raining.
4. Judging from the ruins, it must once have been a beautiful city.
5. Having paid the money to him, he gave me the book.
6. While writing our Chinese essays, the teacher entered the room.
7. Before he coming to school, he wrote a letter to his father.
8. Considering your age, you have done very well.
9. Living in a small village, he rarely has visitors.
10. When discussing our future plan, he raised a very important question.

### 練習 (23)

寫五句有分詞片語 (participial phrase) 的句子。

### 練習 (24)

寫五旬句子，每句含有以 while 或 when 開始而有分詞的子句，同時該子句的主詞和助動詞須省去。

## IX. 幾個誤用的動詞

§ 98. call

- a. { 誤: His name is *called* Ling-son.  
       正: His name is Ling-son.  
       正: He is *called* Ling-son.  
       譯: 他的名字是林笨。

【講解】 His name is called Ling-sin. 這種話是由於說者直譯「他的名字叫做林笨」而來。我們應該照上面改正的這種說法說。

- b. { 誤: My father *called* me to do it.  
       正: My father *told* me to do it.  
       譯: 我的父親囑我做這事。

【講解】 call 不能用以代 tell. 上面的錯誤由於直譯「我父叫我做這事」而來。

- c. { 誤: They are *called to be* cowards.  
       正: They are *called* cowards.  
       正: They are *said to be* cowards.  
       譯: 他們被稱為懦夫。

【講解】 call 後不能接 to be, 上面這種錯誤或者是由 said to be, thought to be 等的類推而來。

- d. { 誤: He may be *called as* a gentleman.  
       正: He may be *called* a gentleman.  
       譯: 他可稱為君子。

【講解】 call 後不能接 as, 上面的錯誤也許由 regarded as 的類推而來。

§ 99. cross

誤: They put a net *cross* the river.

正: They put a net *across* the river.

譯: 他們撒一個網從河的一邊到另一邊。

【講解】 cross 是動詞, 與它相當的副詞是 across, 兩者不能混用。

§ 100. discuss

- a. { 誤: What *are* they *discussing* about?  
 正: What *are* they *discussing*?  
 譯: 他們討論什麼?

【講解】 discuss 是一個及物動詞, 根本不能接用介系詞, 故說 discuss about 是不妥的。

- b. { 誤: They *discussed* *that* more attention  
 should be paid to Chinese.  
 正: They *discussed* *the question* of paying  
 more attention to Chinese.  
 譯: 他們討論更應注重國文的問題。

【講解】 discuss 後面不能接用以 that 起首的名詞子句。

§ 101. accompany.

- a. { 誤: I shall *accompany with you*.  
       正: I shall *accompany you*.  
       譯: 我將與你同行。

【講解】 *accompany* 是一個及物動詞，在它的受詞前面不應用介系詞。不過像 *we accompany our words with gestures*, *My illness is accompanied with headache* 這種句子是對的，*with gestures* 與 *with headache* 都不過是副詞片語 (*adverbial phrase*)。

- b. { 誤: I *accompanied* my brother *to go to the theatre*.  
       正: I *accompanied* my brother *to the theatre*.  
       譯: 我陪我的兄弟一同到戲院去。

【講解】 *accompany* 原有同行的意思，如再說 *to go* 是不通的。上面這種錯誤完全由於直譯中文而起。

§ 102. elapse

- a. { 誤: There was an *elapse* of three weeks.  
       正: Three weeks *elapsed*.  
       譯: 三個星期過去了。

【講解】 *elapse* 這一個動詞，絕不能作名詞用。

- b. { 誤: Three years *have been elapsed*.  
       正: Three years *have elapsed*.  
       譯: 三年已經過去了。

【講解】 *olapse* 是一個不及物動詞，故不應有被動語態。

§ 103. apologize

誤： They *apologized that they were late.*

正： They *apologized for being late.*

譯： 他們爲遲而道歉。

【講解】 *apologize* 後面不能接名詞子句 (noun clause)，它的後面總是有介系詞的，例如： He *apologized to me for his rudeness.* (他爲無禮而對我道歉)。

§ 104. avoid

- a. { 誤： Can we *avoid to make* such mistakes?  
 正： Can we *avoid making* such mistakes?  
 譯： 我們能避免犯這種錯誤麼？

【講解】 *avoid* 後面不能接用不定詞，故上面的 *to make* 應改爲動名詞 (gerund) *making*。

- b. { 誤： I could not *avoid from doing* so.  
 正： I could not *avoid doing* so.  
 譯： 我不能避免這樣做。

【講解】 *avoid* 是一個及物動詞，在它的受詞前面不能用介系詞。

- c. { 誤： He tried to *avoid that anyone should hear him.*  
 正： He tried to *avoid being heard by anyone.*  
 譯： 他設法避免被人聽見。

【講解】 avoid 不能接用以 that 起首的名詞子句作它的受詞。

### 練習 (25)

把下面動詞誤用的地方改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. Two weeks have been elapsed since he left.
2. Don't walk cross the room.
3. Is your name called Lien-shan?
4. He told me that he would accompany with me.
5. Let us diseuss about the matter.
6. They called him to be an ass.
7. The boy is called John.
8. I accompanied my parents to go to the restaurant.
9. I apologized to him that I had taken his book.
10. Let us avoid to use such words.
11. They are called as fools.
12. The lightning is accompanied with thunder.
13. What did your teacher call you to do?
14. They discussed that examinations should be abolished.
15. There has been an elapse of three years.
16. I shall avoid from making any promise.
17. He is said to be wise

18. He came here, accompanied by his daughters.
19. He apologized for what he had done.
20. He avoided that mistakes should be made.

§ 105. stop

誤： The teacher is coming. Let us *stop to talk*.

正： The teacher is coming. Let us *stop talking*.

譯： 教員來了。我們停止講話罷。

【講解】 有些動詞，後面接不定詞與接動名詞；在意義上是一樣的，例如：我們可說 *I like to read novels*，也可說 *I like reading novels*，我們可說 *I begin to do it*，也可說 *I begin doing it*。stop 後面接不定詞與接動名詞則有相反的意義。它後面用不定詞時，意思就是「停下來做某事」，就是「停去別的事來做某一事」。例如：Let us stop to talk 這句話的意思是，「讓我們停下來談話」也就是「停下現在的事來開始談話」。但是上面例句中的 stop to talk 却錯用了，因為說者的原意是「停止談話」並不是「停止現在的事來開始談話」。如果說話人的原意是「停止做一件事」他就應該在 stop 後面用動名詞，所以「停止談話」應該是 stop talking.

§ 106. rob

誤： He *robbed my watch*.

正： He *robbed me of my watch*.

譯： 他把我的錶搶去。



【講解】 rob 的真意是「對…加劫奪的行爲」，它沒有「把…搶去」的意義。He robbed the man 的意思是「他對這人幹劫奪的行爲」，並不是「他把這人搶去」。rob 既不能作「把……搶去」解，那末「他把我的錶搶去」就不能譯爲 He robbed my watch, 而應該譯爲 He robbed me of my watch. 讀者必須牢記，就是 rob 的受詞總是表示人 (person) 或地方 (place) 的，那表示被搶物的名詞的前面總有一個介系詞。爲明了起見，現在再提出兩句例句以示 rob 的用法：The bandits *robbed them of* all their money, *They were robbed of* all their money.

### § 107. refuse

誤：The school *refused that he should go*.

正：The school *refused to let him go*.

譯：學校拒絕讓他去。

【講解】 refuse 後面不能接名詞子句作其受詞，它後面除名詞或代名詞外常接不定詞。

### § 108. happen

誤：As I was walking in the park, I *happened* some foreigners.

正：As I was walking in the park, I *met* some foreigners.

譯：我在公園中散步時遇着幾個外國人。

【講解】 happen 是一個不及物動詞，它作「發生」，「偶發」解，不能作「遇着」解，因而也不能用以代 meet.

§ 109. resemble

- a. { 誤: He *resembles to* his father.  
       正: He *resembles* his father.  
       譯: 他肖似他的父親。

【講解】 resemble 是一個及物動詞，它的受詞前面不應用 to。

- b. { 誤: He *is resembling* his father.  
       正: He *resembles* his father.  
       譯: 他肖似他的父親。

【講解】 resemble 一字本身已有「繼續」的意義在裏面，故不能再用進行時態。

§ 110. mention

- a. { 誤: I forgot to *mention about it*.  
       正: I forgot to *mention it*.  
       譯: 我忘記提及它。

【講解】 mention 是一個及物動詞，它的受詞前不應加介系詞。mention 的意思是 say something about, 說 mention about 無異說 mention about about, 那不是很有趣麼?

- b. { 誤: He *mentioned to go* there before.  
       正: He *mentioned going* there before.  
       譯: 他說起從前到過那裏去。

【講解】 mention 後面可接動名詞而不可接不定詞。

§ 111. help

誤： I *couldn't help to weep*.

正： I *couldn't help weeping*.

譯： 我忍不住哭。

【講解】 help 作「幫助」解時，後面可接不定詞。can't help 作「不禁」，「忍不住」，「無法避免」等解，它的後面可用動名詞而不可用不定詞。

§ 112. lack

誤： He *is lack* experience.

正： He *lacks* experience.

正： He *is lacking in* experience.

譯： 他缺少經驗。

【講解】 lack 是一個動詞，不是一個形容詞，所以前面不能無故加 verb to be. 上面改正句中的 lacking 是形容詞，不能認它是純粹的現在分詞，因而 is lacking 也不是現在進行時態。lacking 既是形容詞，故後面有介系詞 in. 倘使我們要把 He lacks experience 改爲現在進行時態，我們只須把 lacks 改爲 is lacking，但後面不應加 in，因爲這裏的現在分詞 lacking 是述部動詞的一部份，它是一個純粹的動詞，並不是形容詞。

## 練習 (26)

把下面動詞誤用的地方改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. Did he mention about the matter?
2. They are resebling in appearance.

3. I can't help to feel sorry for him.
4. It helps no one to unde stand.
5. Did you happen some of your friends on your journey?
6. Is he lacking money?
7. They are resembling to each other in shape.
8. Don't mention to forget your promise.
9. What is he talking about? Let us stop to listen to him.
10. They robbed all he had.
11. He is lack common sense (常識).
12. The school has begun. Tell them to stop to play in the gymanasium (健身房).
13. He refused that he should come.
14. The house was robbed of every thing inside.
15. I am lacking in strength.

§ 113. prefer

- a. { 誤: He *prefers* Chinese *than* English.  
 正: He *prefers* Chinese *to* English.  
 譯: 他寧喜中文不喜英文。

【講解】 prefer 後之名詞應接 *to*, 不該接 *than*.

- b. { 誤: I *prefer* to do this *more than* that.  
 正: I *prefer* to do this *rather than* that.  
 譯: 我寧願做這事, 不願做那事。

【講解】 prefer 後之不定詞不可接 more than 或 than, 而應接 rather than.

§ 114. miss

誤: Don't *miss to hear* her sing.

正: Don't *miss hearing* her sing.

譯: 弗錯過聽她唱歌。

【講解】 miss 後可接動名詞, 不可接不定詞。

§ 115. make

誤: He *is making* a composition.

正: He *is writing* a composition.

譯: 他正在寫一篇作文。

【講解】 make 一字不能用以代 write. 上面這種錯誤由於直譯中文「做文章」而來。

§ 116. leave

a. { 誤: He *left from the school* early in the morning.  
       正: He *left the school* early in the morning.  
       譯: 他早晨一早離開學校。

【講解】 leave 作「離開」解, 它的受詞前不能用介系詞。

b. { 誤: Please *leave off to do* that.  
       正: Please *leave off doing* that.  
       譯: 請停止幹那事。

【講解】 *leave off* 作「停止」解，後面可接動名詞，不應接不定詞。

§ 117. know

- a. { 誤: He does not *know to read and write*.  
       正: He does not *know how to read and write*.  
       譯: 他不知道如何讀書寫字。

【講解】 *know* 後面用作受詞的不定詞總有一個疑問詞如 *how, what, when* 等在前面。

- b. { 誤: Which do you *know* is the best?  
       正: Which do you *think* is the best?  
       譯: 你以為那一個最好?

【講解】 *know* 這個字不能用以代替 *think*。上面這句誤句或許是由於直譯「你知道那一個最好？」而來。

§ 118. acquaint

- 誤: I *acquaint* the man.  
 正: I *am acquainted with* the man.  
 正: I *know* the man.  
 譯: 我認識這人。

【講解】 *acquaint* 這字作「使知道」或「使認識」解，不作「知道」或「認識」解。「我認識這人」的英語不是 *I acquaint him* 而是 *I know him*。如用 *acquaint*，則在這句話裏面應該用它的被動語態，並在後面加用介系詞 *with*。現在再舉兩例以示 *acquaint* 的用法：一

I acquaint the man with the news (= I cause the man to know the news = I tell the news to the man).

I am acquainted with the news (= I have been caused to know the news = I know the news).

### § 119. defend

誤: I defended the enemy.

正: I defended myself from (或 against) the enemy.

譯: 我防禦敵人以保衛自己。

【講解】defend 有兩重意思，就是「抵禦外力」與「保護」。因為這字一般字典都譯作「防禦」。初學者就往往把它誤用。「我防禦敵人」這句話在中文是說得通的，但把它直譯為 I defended the enemy 就成笑話了，因為照英文的字面解釋，「敵人是受我保護」了。故在用 defend 時，它後面必有一個表示被保護的人或物的名詞或代名詞，那表示被抵禦的人或物的名詞或代名詞前須加個 from 或 against.

### 練習 (27)

把下面動詞誤用的地方改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. I acquainted him with the event.
2. I know him to be a good man.
3. We must defend their attack.

4. He knows to fire a gun (放鎗).
5. The poor prefer summer than winter.
6. All of them have left from the place.
7. The editor is making a leader (社論).
8. I missed to see the picture.
9. I prefer to spend my vacation here more than at home.
10. I will leave off to study Japanese.
11. I acquaint with these boys.
12. The law defends people from injustice (冤枉).
13. Do you know how to pronounce this word?
14. If..... I should have missed to see you.
15. Which do you know is more desirable (值得希求), health or wealth?



## 第五章 關於副詞 (Adverbs) 的錯誤

### § 120. 繫動詞 (linking verbs) 後誤用副詞：一

誤： He feels *happily*.

正： He feels *happy*.

譯： 他覺得快樂。

誤： She looks *beautifully*.

正： She looks *beautiful*.

譯： 她容貌美麗。

【講解】 繫動詞後面必有補詞 (complement)，這種補詞非形容詞即為名詞或代名詞，而且是指着或形容主詞的。補語既係指着或形容主詞，它們在該用形容詞時，就不能用副詞代替，因為副詞是不能形容主詞的。上面誤句的犯者誤認 *feel*, *look* 等字為普通動詞，因而誤認它們應由副詞形容。下面這幾個動詞都是繫動詞，千萬不要在它們後面用副詞：一

He *seems* angry.

He *appears* proud. (*appear* 作「出現」解，不是繫動詞)

Sugar *tastes* sweet. (*taste* 作「嘗味道」解，不是繫動詞)

It *smells* sweet. (*smell* 作「嗅氣味」解，不是繫動詞)

His voice *sounds* harsh. (sound 作「鳴響」解不是繫動詞)

He *has become* rich.

He *has grown* old. (grow 作「生長」解，不是繫動詞)

§ 121. hardly 與 hard, highly 與 high, lately 與 late  
等：—

誤： He studies *hardly*.

正： He studies *hard*.

譯： 他用功讀書。

誤： The birds flew *highly*.

正： The birds flew *high*.

譯： 鳥飛得高。

誤： He returned *lately* from school.

正： He returned *late* from school.

譯： 他從學校回來得遲。

【講解】 *hardly* 與 *hard*, *highly* 與 *high*, *lately* 與 *late* 雖然都是副詞，但其間的意義是不同的。*Hardly* 作「僅」，「幾乎不」等解，如原意是「勤勞」則應用 *hard*；*highly* 作「非常」解，如原意是「高」則應用 *high*；*lately* 作「新近」，「近來」解，如原意是「遲」則應用 *late*。上面的錯誤由於犯者誤認 *hard*, *high*, *late* 等字只是形容詞，因而誤把 *ly* 加上去把它們作為副詞。

§ 122. 副詞誤作名詞：一

- a. { 誤： Please *stay in here* till I return.  
       正： Please *stay here* till I return.  
       譯： 請住在這裏一直等到我回來。
- { 誤： Do you see the man *standing at there*?  
       正： Do you see the man *standing there*?  
       譯： 你看見站在那首的人麼？

【講解】 Here, there, where, everywhere 等都是副詞，不能作名詞用，在它們前面不能用介系詞，但也有例外，例如：He walks *from here to there*, He came *from there* (但應說 He came here, 不應說 He came to here; 應說 He went there, 不應說 He went to there), *Where* did you come *from*? Where are you bound to? (但不能說 Where are you going to?).

- b. { 誤： When will you go *to home*?  
       正： When will you go *home*?  
       正： When will you go *to your home*?  
       譯： 你將於何時回家？

【講解】 home 可作名詞也可作副詞，作副詞時前面不應用介系詞。作名詞時，前面總有 your, his, her 這一類所有格代名詞，但 at home 是例外。上面第一句改正句中的 home 是副詞，第二句改正句中的 home 是名詞。

## 練習 (28)

把下面括弧中的適當的副詞或副詞片語填在空格處：—

1. He ought to have been — (here, in here) by this time.
2. He lives ten miles — (where, from where) I am living.
3. He sits up very — (late, lately) (他晚上睡得很遲)。
4. When shall we get — (there, to there).
5. He got — (home, to home) safe and sound.
6. Does he appear — (wise, wisely)?
7. That explanation sounds — (truly, true) (那說明聽起來好像是確實的)。
8. I shall go back — (to home, home) very soon.
9. I feel quite — (comfortable, comfortably).
10. They are found — (everywhere, in everywhere) in the city.
11. How far is it — (here, from here) — (there, to there)?
12. I work as — (hard, hardly) as I can.
13. I grow — (uneasy, uneasily) at his long absence.
14. He is — (high, highly) paid.
15. The waves ran — (high, highly).

§ 123. again

誤： Let me *rewrite it again*.

正： Let me *rewrite it*.

譯： 讓我把它重寫。

【講解】 *again* 這字往往被初學英語的人隨便濫用。例如：上面 *rewrite* 一字已含「再」的意義，如再用 *again* 就重複了。故遇句中的上文已有「再」的意義時，*again* 一字不可用。

§ 124. also 與 either

誤： Wang is not right, and Chang is *not right also*.

正： Wang is not right, and Chang is *not right either*.

譯： 王不對，張也不對。

【講解】 在否定詞後面，我們只用 *either*，不能用 *also*。在否定詞前面，仍可用 *also*，而且不能用 *either*，例如：*Chang is also not right* 並不錯。

§ 125. always

誤： They *always do not* ask questions.

正： They *never* ask questions.

譯： 他們常常不（永不）問問題。

【講解】 「永不」或「常常不」的英語是 *never*，不是 *always do (does, did) not*，也不是 *always is (am, are,*

was, were) not. 這裏要注意的就是 does not always, is not always 等語是有的，而且它們的意思是「不常常」(含有「有的時候」的意思)，不是「永不」或「常常不」。例如：  
A great scholar is not always a very wise man 這句話的意思是：大學者不是常常是一個很聰明的人，他有時也是很蠢的。

### § 126. even

誤： *Even* he is poor, he will not steal.

正： *Even if (Even though)* he is poor, he will not steal.

譯： 即使他窮，他也不會偷竊。

【講解】 *even* 不能作連接詞用。國人往往把它誤替 *even if (even though)* 而用。

### § 127. ever

誤： Have you *ever* seen it? Yes, I *have ever seen* it.

正： Have you *over* seen it? Yes, I *have (seen it)*.

譯： 你會見過它麼？是，我曾見過。

正： Have you *ever* seen it? Yes, I saw it *once*.

譯： 你會見過它麼？是，我看見過一次。

【講解】 *ever* 可以用在問句中，但不能用在答語中。

§ 128. very 與 much

- a. { 誤: We all *very* like it.  
       正: We all like it *very* much.  
       譯: 我們都很喜歡它。

【講解】 *very* 只能修飾形容詞或副詞，不能修飾動詞，修飾動詞時該用 *much*。

- b. { 誤: I was *very* surprised at the news.  
       正: I was *much* surprised at the news.  
       譯: 我很驚異這消息。

【講解】 過去分詞應用 *much* 修飾，不用 *very* 修飾，但也有例外，如：*very dejected*, *very delighted*, *very contented* 等。對文法取嚴厲態度的人用 *much* 替代 *very*。*very surprised* 在英美人的會話中也常聽到，有時在正式的文章中也可見到，但我們總以避免爲是。

§ 129. before

- 誤: The general died three weeks *before*.  
 正: The general died three weeks *ago*.  
 譯: 這將軍三星期前死去。

【講解】 *before* 是指從過去某時算起的「以前」，或將來某時算起的「以前」，它不能用以指從現時算起的「以前」，指從現時算起的「以前」是 *ago*。

§ 130. yes 與 no

誤: Wang Ching-wei is not a general, is he?

*Yes, he is not a general.*

正: Wang Ching-wei is not a general, is he? *No,*

*he is not a general.*

譯: 汪精衛不是一個將軍,是麼?否,他不是一個將軍。

誤: Chiang Kai-shek is not a general, is he? *No,*

*he is a general.*

正: Chiang Kai-shek is not a general, is he? *Yes,*

*he is a general.*

譯: 蔣介石不是一個將軍,是麼?是,他是一個將軍。

【講解】國人對於英語的 *yes* 與 *no*, 十九不能正確地用,其原因在於中國的所謂「是」與「否」與英語的 *yes* 與 *no*, 在意義上有些不同,而國人却把中國的意義應用到英語上面去。中國答語中的「是」是表示問者的話是對的 *true*, 「否」是表示問者的話不對的 *untrue*. 例如:「汪精衛不是將軍,是麼?」這句話,答者一定認為是對的,所以他就說「是的,他不是一個將軍」。又如「蔣介石不是一個將軍,是麼?」這句話,答者一定認為是不對的,他也一定會說,「否,他是一個將軍」。然而英語的 *yes* 與 *no* 並不能作「對」與「不對」解,前者包含「肯定」(*affirmative*) 的意義,後者包含「否定」(*negative*) 的意義,而且這「肯定」與「否定」是指直接答語而言,所以如果那直接的答語是肯定的,那麼就該用 *yes*, 如果那直接的答語是否定的,



那末就用 no. 例如上面第一句的答語是否定的，故用 no；第二句的答語是肯定的，故用 yes.

### 練習 (29)

把下面關於副詞誤用的地方改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. They always do not come here.
2. Will you please repeat the sentence again?
3. Even I were in his place, I would not go.
4. He is not always right.
5. Is Manchuria not Chinese territory? No, it is Chinese territory.
6. He does not like it, and I do not like it also.
7. I shall be very obliged, if you will kindly send it to me.
8. Have you ever visited that place? Yes, I have ever visited it
9. I visited that place about two years before.

### 練習 (30)

回答下面的問句，注意 yes 與 no 的正確用法：—

1. Kwang Hua University (光華大學) is not a Christian college, is it?

2. Is the University of Shanghai (滬江大學) not a Christian college?
3. The Chinese belong to the yellow race, don't they?
4. The Americans do not belong to the yellow race, do they?
5. Both Chiang Kai-shek and Wang Ching-wei are not communists, are they?

## 第六章 關於介系詞 (Prepositions) 的錯誤

### I. 名詞前面的介系詞

#### § 131. day

- a. { 誤: You may come *at any day* you please.  
正: You may come *on any day* you please.  
譯: 你可以在隨便那一天來。

【講解】 day 作「一日」解時，前面的介系詞應該是 on 不是 at. 「在任何一日」是 on any day, 「在何日?」是 on what day? 「在那日」是 on that day.

- b. { 誤: Some people do not work *at the day*.  
正: Some people do not work *during the day*.  
譯: 有些人日間不作工。

【講解】「在日間」應該是 *during* 或 *(in) the day*, 不是 *at the day*.

- c. { 誤: We cannot tell what will happen *on the days to come*.  
正: We cannot tell what will happen *in the days to come*.  
譯: 我們不知將來會發生什麼事。

【講解】犯 a 錯誤的人不知在 day 前用 on, 犯上面錯誤的人都誤用了 on, 原因在於他們只知道在 day 字前面只能用 on. 實則 day (往往是複數) 作「時期」解時, 前面應用 in, 不應用 on, 例如: *in ancient days* (在古時), *in former days* (在昔時), *in past days* (在從前), *in feudal days* (在封建時代)。

§ 132. morning

- a. { 誤: I go to school *at the morning*.  
       正: I go to school *in the morning*.  
       譯: 我早晨到學校去。

【講解】「在早晨」應該是 *in the morning*, 不是 *at the morning*.

- b. { 誤: I was not there *in that morning*.  
       正: I was not there *on that morning*.  
       譯: 那天早晨我不在那邊。

【講解】「在早晨」而指某一日時, 在 morning 的前面應用 on, 不應用 in, 例如: *on a warm morning in May* (在一個五月和暖的早上), *on the morning of the tenth instant* (在本月十日的早上), *on the following morning* (在次晨), *on Sunday morning* (在星期日早晨)。但 *in the morning on Sunday* (在星期日早晨) 這種說法是對的。

§ 133. night

- a. { 誤: The moon shines *in night*.  
       正: the moon shines *at night*.  
       譯: 月在晚上照着。

【講解】「在晚上」中的 *night* 前應用 *at*, 但 *the night* 前可用 *in*, 而不可用 *at*. 例如: A fire broke out at one o'clock *in the night* (晚間一點鐘時發生火災)。

- b.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{誤: He came at a cold night in February.} \\ \text{誤: He came in a cold night in February.} \\ \text{正: He came on a cold night in February.} \\ \text{譯: 他在一個二月的寒夜來。} \end{array} \right.$

【講解】「在夜間」而特指某一天時, 在 *night* 前應用 *on*, 不應用 *at* 或 *in*, 例如: *on Saturday night*, *on the night of the fourteenth of May* 等。但 *in the night* (或 *at night*) *on the fourteenth of May* 這種說法是對的。

#### § 134. noon

- 誤: The gun is fired *in noon*.  
 正: The gun is fired *at noon*.  
 譯: 礮在午時放。

【講解】「在午時」中 *noon* 前面不用 *in*, 應用 *at*.

#### § 135. afternoon

- a.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{誤: It is hot at the afternoon.} \\ \text{正: It is hot in the afternoon.} \\ \text{譯: 在下午天氣熱。} \end{array} \right.$

【講解】「在下午」中的 *the afternoon* 前應用 *in*, 不應用 *at*.

- b.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{誤: He never works in Sunday afternoon.} \\ \text{正: He never works on Sunday afternoon.} \\ \text{譯: 他在星期日下午從來不作工作。} \end{array} \right.$

【講解】「在下午」而特指某一日，*afternoon* 前應用 *on*，不應用 *in*，例如：*on summer afternoons* (在夏天的下午)，*on the afternoon of the first of May* (在五月一日下午) 等。但 *in the afternoon on Sunday* 種這說法是對的。

§ 136. evening

- a. { 誤： They never work *at the evening*.  
       正： They never work *in the evening*.  
       譯： 他們從不在晚上工作。

【講解】「在晚上」中的 *the evening* 前應用 *in*，不應用 *at*。

- b. { 誤： He was not at home *in Sunday evening*  
       正： He was not at home *on Sunday evening*.  
       譯： 星期日晚上他不在家。

【講解】「在晚上」而特指某日，*evening* 前應用 *on*，不應用 *in*，例如：*on a summer evening*，*on the evening of the tenth instant* 等。但 *in the evening on the tenth instant* 這種說法是對的。

練習 (31)

把下面誤用的介系詞改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. The sun rises *at the morning*.
2. *On the days of our forefathers* (祖先) *conditions were different*.

3. I received the letter in the afternoon on the third of July.
4. At what day did he come here?
5. Bats hide at the day.
6. I saw him in Sunday evening.
7. He used to study late in night.
8. I arrived at ten o'clock in the night of the eighth.
9. He left in noon.
10. I returned home in the following morning.

### 練習 (32)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：--

1. I was engaged —— that day (在那天我有事在身)。
2. Trams are specially crowded —— a wet day (雨天)。
3. —— past days I seldom went to theatres.
4. I did not go to school —— Sunday morning.
5. I go to my office at nine o'clock —— the morning.
6. I never read —— night.
7. This happened —— the night of Wednesday.
8. The prisoner got away —— the night on the second of June.

9. The battle commenced (開始) —— noon on the 3rd of August.
10. He used to sleep —— summer afternoons.
11. He started early —— the afternoon.
12. He stayed at home —— the afternoon of that day.
13. I will ring you up (打電話給你) at six o'clock —— the evening.
14. They started —— the same evening.
15. I arrived late —— the evening on the tenth.

§ 137. one o'clock, two o'clock, etc.

誤: I shall come *on six o'clock* tomorrow morning.

正: I shall come *at six o'clock* tomorrow morning.

譯: 我將於明日六點鐘來。

【講解】「在一點鐘」,「在二點鐘」等中的 o'clock 前應用 at, 不用 on.

§ 138. Sunday, Monday, etc.

誤: I hope to see you *at Sunday*.

正: I hope to see you *on Sunday*.

譯: 我希望在星期日見你。

【講解】「在星期日」,「在星期一」等中的 Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 等前面應用 on, 不用 at.



§ 139. January 1, February 2, etc.

誤: What did you do *in January 1st* (或 the first of January)?

正: What did you do *on January* (或 the first of January)?

譯: 你在正月初一做什麼事?

【講解】「在正月初一」,「在二月初二」,「在三月初三」等應該是 *on January 1st, on February 2nd, on March 3rd* 等,不是 *in January 1st* 等。

§ 140. Spring, summer, autumn, and winter

誤: It is hot *at summer*.

正: It is hot *in summer*.

譯: 天氣在夏季熱。

【講解】Spring, summer, autumn, winter 等字後應用 *in* 以表示「在」,不能用 *at*。

§ 141. time

a. { 誤: *At ancient times* conditions were different.  
 正: *In ancient times* conditions were different.  
 譯: 古時情形不同。

【講解】time 有「時期」或「時代」的意味時,它前面的「在」應該是 *in*,不是 *at*,例如: *in modern times* (在

近代), in his time (在他的時代), in times gone by (在昔時) 等。

- b. { 誤: I have lived here *from that time*.  
 正: I have lived here *since that time*.  
 譯: 我自那時起一直住在這裏。

【講解】「從某一定時後繼續到現在」應該用 *since* 來表示, 不用 *from* 來表示。

### § 142. meantime

誤: *At the meantime* you must consent to what I ask.

正: *In the meantime* you must consent to what I ask.

譯: 同時你必須答應我的請求。

【講解】*In the meantime* 是一句慣用語, *meantime* 前絕不能用 *at* 代 *in*. 上面的錯誤也許是由於類推 *at the same time* 而來。

### § 143. age

誤: He was quite happy *at his old age*.

正: He was quite happy *in his old age*.

譯: 他在老年時期十分快樂。

【講解】*age* 作「年齡」解時, 它前面的「在」是 *at*. 如果它有「時期」或「時代」的意味, 前面的「在」應該是 *in*, 不是 *at*, 例如: *in the age of heroes* (在英雄時代), *in*

the middle ages (在中古時代), in his mature age (在他的成年時期) 等。

§ 144. occasion

誤: This happened *at (in) another occasion.*

正: This happened *on another occasion.*

譯: 這事在另一個時機發生。

【講解】 occasion 前不應用 at 以表示「在」, 而應用 on 來表示, 例如: on the occasion of the festival (在節期), on similar occasions (在相似的時機), on such an occasion (在這樣的時機)。

§ 145. future

誤: You must be careful *at future.*

正: You must be careful *in future.*

譯: 你將來須小心。

【講解】 future 或 the future 前應用 in 以表示「在」, 不應用 at.

練習 (33)

把下面誤用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. The vacation begins in July 1st.
2. He never studies at Sunday.
3. Our office opens on nine o'clock.
4. I live in town at winter.

5. It happened in times gone by.
6. I have not heard from him from that time.
7. At the meantime he refused my offer.
8. That custom prevailed at the middle ages.
9. What did you find in that occasion?
10. Things will be different at future.

## 練習 (34)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. We have a festival (節)—— the first Sunday in October.
2. The Dragon Boat Festival (端午節) falls —— June 2nd.
3. He will succeed —— the near future.
4. He had ease (舒適) —— his old age.
5. It is a plant that flowers (開花)—— autumn.
6. Things were quite different —— his time.
7. It happened —— a similar occasion.
8. The work began —— nine o'clock in the morning.
9. He has been ill since that time.
10. Could you come —— Tuesday next?

§ 146. side

誤: His house is *in the opposite side*.

正: His house is *on the opposite side*.

譯：他的房屋在對面。

【講解】side 前面的「在」應該是 on, 不是 in. 我們應說 on every side (在各方面), on the left side (在左邊), on the south side (在南邊)。不過有 beside 意味的 at the side of 這句片語中却用 at 而不用 on.

§ 147. direction

誤：They will go to the same direction.

正：They will go in the same direction.

譯：他們將向同一方向而去。

【講解】direction 前面的「向」或「朝」應該是 in, 不是 to. 我們應該說 in opposite directions (向相反的方向), in western direction (向西), in every direction (向各方)。

§ 148. east, west, south, north, etc.

{	a.	誤：Kiukiang is situated <i>in the south of Nanchang.</i>
		正：Kiukiang is situated <i>to the north of Nanchang.</i>
		正：Kiukiang is situated <i>north of Nanchang.</i>
		譯：九江位於南昌之北面。

【講解】in the south of Nanchang 的意思是「在南昌的南部」；如說 Kiukiang is situated in the north, 那就是說九江是在南昌的境內了。「在…之北(東,西,南)」

應該是 *to the north (east, west, south) of* 或 *north (east, west, south) of*, 而且後一種比較來得普通。總之 *east, west* 等表示方向的字前面, *in* 與 *to* 都可用, 但意義不同罷了, 例如: *Chokiang is in the east of China* (浙江在中國的東部), *Japan lies to the east of China* (日本位於中國之東面)。

- b. { 誤: *Australia lies on the south of China.*  
 正: *Australia lies to the south of China.*  
 正: *Australia lies south of China.*  
 譯: 澳洲位於中國的南面。

【講解】 *south, north* 等表示方向的字前面當然可以用 *on*, 但它的意義與用 *in* 或 *to* 時不同。我們可以說 *Kiangsu lies on the north of Chekiang*, 但不能說 *Australia lies on the south of China*。江蘇在浙江的南邊, 兩省是毗連的, 上面例句中用 *on* 並不錯, 因為 *on the north of* 就是 *on the north side of*。澳洲在中國的南面, 但在中國的南邊, 它們是隔離而不毗連的; 上面例句中絕不能用 *on*, 因為我們如果把省去的 *side* 加上去而成 *on the south side of China*, 我們就覺得那例句說得不合理了。不過這裏須要說明的就是可以用 *on* 的地方也可以用 *to*, 雖則應該用 *to* 的地方不能用 *on*, 例如: *the settlement to the south of the Soochow Creek*, *the settlement south of the Soochow Creek*, 和 *the settlement on the south of the Soochow Creek* 都可以說。

在 a 的解釋中曾說 south (east, west, etc) of 比用 to the south (east, west, etc) 來得普通。但這裏必須說明的就是在 lie 的後面用 to the south (east, west, etc) 比用 south (east, west, etc) 來得普通。

§ 149. end

誤：The stick is very thin *in the end*.

正：The stick is very thin *at the end*.

譯：這棒的末端很細。

【講解】end 如作「末」或「端」解，它前面的「在」應該是 at，不是 in。我們應說 at the end of the month (月底)，at the southern end of the road (這路的南端)，at the end of the term (學期末)。In the end 是一句成語，意思是「最後」，「末了」，相當於 finally。

§ 150. way

a. { 誤：A box stands *on the way*.  
正：A box stands *in the way*.  
譯：一只箱子攔在路上。

【講解】on the way 作「在路中」解。in the way 作「妨礙的」解，如作「在路中」解時，它也含有「妨礙」與「不便」的意義。箱攔在路上當然有使人不便之處，故應說 stands *in the way*，不說 stands *on the way*。

b. { 誤：By *this way* he won her favour.  
正：In *this way* he won her favour.  
譯：這樣他受寵於她了。

【講解】 way 有 manner (樣態) 的意味時, 前面應用 in, 不用 by.

§ 151. home

誤: He was *in home* yesterday.

正: He was *at home* yesterday.

譯: 他昨天在家。

【講解】「在家」是 *at home*, 不是 *in home* (參閱 § 122-b)。

§ 152. meeting

誤: I met him *in the meeting*.

正: I met him *at the meeting*.

譯: 我在會中遇見他。

【講解】 meeting 前的「在」是 *at*, 不是 *in*. 我們應說 I was present *at the meeting* (我在那個集會), There was a disturbance *at the meeting* (會中有擾亂)。

練習 (35)

把下面誤用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. There are difficulties *on* the way.
2. The fields *in* the other side of the river are rich land.
3. I don't think he is *in* home now.
4. You are standing *at* my side.



5. Hankow is situated to the north of the Yangtze River.
6. Kwangtung lies on the south of Chekiang.
7. There was a good attendance in the meeting.
8. He stood in the southern end of the road.
9. They went to the direction of the fire.
10. Hangchow ( 杭州 ) is on the north of Chekiang.

### 練習 (36)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. The tower is — the south side of the river.
2. The trains go — opposite directions.
3. Fukien lies — the south of Chekiang.
4. Chapei is — the north of Shanghai.
5. Hupeli lies — the west of Chekiang.
6. The wire bent — one end.
7. You should not act — this way.
8. I have tried it — every possible way.
9. How are all — home?
10. He proposed a motion (提出議案) — the meeting.

### § 153. sea

- a. { 誤: He is now *in sea*.  
       正: He is now *at sea*.  
       譯: 他現在在航海中。

【講解】 *at sea* 是一句成語，作「航海中」解，它裏面的 *at* 不能改爲別的介系詞。

- b. { 誤: Ships sail *in the sea*.  
       正: Ships sail *on the sea*.  
       譯: 船在海上航行。

【講解】「在海上」是 *on the sea*，不是 *in the sea*。上面的錯誤是由中文的「船在海中航行」而來。不過如果事實確是「在海中」，那麼就應該用 *in the sea*，不用 *on the sea*，例如：We find many kinds of fish in the sea.

#### § 154. river

- 誤: The town lies *along a river*.  
 正: The town lies *on a river*.  
 譯: 這鎮位於江邊。

【講解】 *along* 有 from one end to the other end (自一端至另一端) 的含義，照上面的誤句解釋起來，這鎮是佔着沿江全部的江岸了，那不是違背事實而可笑麼？實際這鎮只佔了江岸的一點 (point of space)，那末必須用表示 point of space 的 *on* 才對。茲再列例句數句以示 *on* 與 *river* 或江名連用的用法：London is situated on the Thames, Hankow is on the Yangtze River, Hangchow lies on the Tsien-tang River. 不過 *river* 前面有時也用 *along*，但與 *on* 的意義不同，例如：Steamboats ply along the river (小汽船沿江來往)。

§ 155. coast

誤： The city lies *along the coast*.

正： The city lies *on the coast*.

譯： 這城在海岸邊。

【講解】 上面例句中應用 *on*，不應用 *along*，其理由與 § 154 中所述者同。而且有的地方看過去似應用 *along*，而習慣上仍用 *on*，例如： This species of shark (這一種鯊魚) is found *on the south coast of England*, Fisherman settle *on the coast of the sea*. *coast* 前面用 *on* 還有接近 (close proximity) 的意義，如 The island is situated *on the east coast of China*.

*coast* 前有時也用 *along*，不應用 *on*，例如 Junks sail *along coasts*.

§ 156. reason

誤： *By this reason* he gave up his smoking.

正： *For this reason* he gave up his smoking.

譯： 爲了這個理由他拋絕他的烟癖。

【講解】 *reason* 前面應用 *for* 不用 *by*，例如： *for similar reasons*, *for obvious reasons*, *for the same reason*, *for some reason*. 不過 *by reason of* (因…) 是一句成語，此時，在 *reason* 前面却用 *by*，不用 *for*. 讀者須注意的就是 *for* 與 *reason* 連用時，中間總有形容字 (adjectival words), *by* 與 *reason* 之間絕不能用 *the* 和其他的字。

§ 157. grounds

誤: He declined *for these grounds*.

正: He declined *on these grounds*.

譯: 他以這些理由而拒絕。

【講解】 reason 前雖用 for, ground 前則用 on.

§ 158. point of view

誤: We see things *in different points of view*.

正: We see things *from different points of view*.

譯: 我們從不同的觀點看事物。

【講解】 point of view 前應用介系詞 from, 不能用 in

§ 159. consideration

誤: The matter is now *in consideration*.

正: The matter is now *under consideration*.

譯: 這事在考慮中。

【講解】「在考慮中」這句話應該是 under consideration, 不是 in consideration.

§ 160. work

誤: He is always *in work*.

正: He is always *at work*.

譯: 他常在工作。

【講解】 at work 是一句成語, at 不能改爲 in.

§ 161. business:

誤: He went there *for business*.

正: He went there *on business*.

譯: 他有事到那邊去。

【講解】 *on business* 是一句成語, *on* 不能改爲 *for*。

## 練習 (37)

把下面誤用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. For what ground did he resign (辭職)?
2. The fleet (艦隊) has been six months in sea.
3. Along what river is Canton (廣州) situated?
4. He resigned by several reasons.
5. He is away for business.
6. The carpenters are on work now.
7. He spoke on the topic (題目) from a religious (宗教的) point of view.
8. The battle was fought in the sea.
9. The island of Tinghai (定海島, 即舟山羣島中之最大者) is along the coast of Chekiang.
10. The question is in consideration.

## 練習 (38)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格:—

1. Are they still — sea?
2. Fresh-water fish are not found — the sea.

3. The squadron (艦隊) is — the wide sea now.
4. The scenery — the river is beautiful.
5. Ningpo lies — the Yung<sup>4</sup> River (甬江).
6. The island of Amoy is situated — the coast of Fukien.
7. I refused — a certain reason.
8. He was unable to stand up — reason of fear.
9. We refused their offer — the same grounds.
10. They studied it — every point of view.
11. We have a plan — consideration.
12. He left home — business.
13. They are all at work.
14. Fuyang (富陽) is situated — the Tsientang River.
15. No ships sail — the coast now.

## II. 名詞後面的介系詞

### § 162. impression

誤: It gave a favourable *impression to* them.

正: It gave a favourable *impression on* them.

譯: 這事給他們一個好印像。

【講解】 *impression* 後接 *on*，不接 *to*，例如：to produce a great impression on them, make a deep impression on me. 上面的 *impression* 後面用 *to* 或許由於那 *gave* 而起；就是說，犯者知道 *gave* 後面有時用 *to* (*give something to some one*)，因而以為此處也應該用 *to*。

### § 163. acquaintance

誤：My *acquaintance of* the subject is limited.

正：My *acquaintance with* the subject is limited.

譯：我對這個科目的所知是有限的。

【講解】 *acquaintance* 後接 *with*，不接 *of*，例如：his acquaintance with the matter, my acquaintance with him. 但 *to make the acquaintance of* (知…結交) 中的 *of* 是可以用的。上面的錯誤也許是由犯者類推 *knowledge* 而來，因 *knowledge* 後不接 *with* 而接 *of*，例如：his knowledge of chemistry, her knowledge of cooking

### § 164. examination

誤：The *examination of* mathematics is to be given to-day.

正：The *examination in* mathematics is to be given to-day.

譯：數學考試將在今日舉行。

【講解】 examination 作「考試」解時，其後用 in，不用 of。如作「檢查」解，其後用 of，例如 an examination of accounts.

§ 165. attention

誤： Let us pay attention *on* our work.

正： Let us pay attention *to* our work.

譯： 讓我們注意我們的工作。

【講解】 attention 後接 to，不接 on；但在 to bestow attention on it, to fix attention on it, to concentrate attention on it 這一類語辭中却用 on 而不用 to，原因是 bestow, fix, concentrate 等字後面應接 on。

§ 166. dislike

誤： I feel a *dislike toward* gambling.

正： I feel a *dislike to* gambling.

譯： 我厭惡賭博。

【講解】 dislike 後接 to, of, 或 for.

§ 167. affection

誤： He has great *affection to* her.

正： He has great *affection for* her.

講： 他深愛她。

【講解】 affection 後應接 for 或 towards，不應接 to.



§ 168. envy

誤： He felt no *envy with* your success.

正： He felt no *envy at* your success.

正： He felt no *envy of* your success.

譯： 他並不嫉妒你的成功。

【講解】 *envy* 後不能接 *with*。如果所嫉妒的是事物，那末 *envy* 後面應接 *at* 或 *of*；如果所嫉妒的是人，那末 *envy* 後面應接 *of*，但不能接 *at*。

§ 169. interest

誤： He has a great *interest with* the subject.

正： He has a great *interest in* the subject.

譯： 他對這科目很有興趣。

【講解】 *interest* 後接 *in*，不接 *with*。但 *to make interest with* (向…運動) 中的 *with* 不能以 *in* 替代。

## 練習 (39)

把下面錯用的介系詞改正，不錯的不必改：一

1. Where did you make the acquaintance of this lady?
2. It made a deep impression to me.
3. I called his attention on it.
4. He owes much to his close acquaintance of his native tongue.
5. They had an examination in English.

6. I have a great dislike for him.
7. He has a great affection to his parents
8. The examination of the machine has been completed.
9. He concentrates his whole attention on the subject.
10. I have a great liking for science.
11. He feels no envy with my advantages.
12. I have an interest with his welfare.
13. I shall never forget the impression made to me.
14. She has a good knowledge of music.
15. I feel envy at him.

### 練習 (40)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. It gave a very bad impression — for-  
eigners.
2. I have close acquaintance — it.
3. He made the acquaintance — her in  
England.
4. I have no knowledge — his death.
5. When shall we have our examination —  
Chinese.
6. He made an examination — the soldier's  
wounds

7. He did not pay any attention — the matter.
8. He fixed his whole attention — the picture.
9. He took a dislike — history.
10. I have no liking — towns.
11. She has an affection — children.
12. He felt some envy — my promotion.
13. I feel envy — the rich.
14. He takes special interest — educational questions.
15. He made interest — the judge.

### § 170. influence

- 誤： His parents have no *influence on* him.  
 正： His parents have no *influence over* him.  
 譯： 他的父母對他沒有權力。

【講解】 *influence* 作「權勢」解時，後面接 *over*。倘作「影響」解，則接 *on*，例如： *My advice has no influence on his actions.*

### § 171. need

- 誤： We are *in need for* assistance.  
 正： We are *in need of* assistance  
 譯： 我們需要幫助。

【講解】 need 後面通常接 for 或 of, 但 in need of 是一句成語, 中間的 of 不能改用 for.

§ 172. demand

誤: There is a great *demand of* wheat.

正: There is a great *demand for* wheat.

譯: 麥的需要很大。

【講解】 demand 作名詞時, 其後應接 for, 不接 of.

§ 173. motive

誤: I cannot understand his *motive of* doing this.

正: I cannot understand his *motive for* doing this.

譯: 我不能了解他做這事的動機。

【講解】 對某事而發的動機就是 motive, 其後應接 for, 那 for 的受詞所表示的就是動機所要做的事。motive 後當然有時也可接 of, 但 of 的受詞所表示的往往是動機的內容, 例如: He did it from *motives of kindness*.

§ 174. excuse

誤: There is no *excuse of* his conduct.

正: There is no *excuse for* his conduct.

譯: 他的行為沒有可以寬恕的地方。

【講解】 *excuse* 不論其作「推諉」解或作「寬恕」解，其後總接 *for*，不接 *to*。

### § 175. emphasis

誤： He spoke with particular *emphasis to* the question of English pronunciation.

正： He spoke with particular *emphasis on* the question of English pronunciation.

譯： 他演講時尤着重於英語發音問題。

【講解】 *emphasis* 後通常接 *on* 不接 *to*，但與 *give* 連用時則接 *to*，例如： He gave some *emphasis to* the theory of evolution (他有點着重於進化論)。

### § 176. search

誤： I am *in search for* a good servant.

正： I am *in search of* a good servant.

譯： 我找尋一個好僕人。

【講解】 *search* 後通常雖接 *for*，但 *in search of* 中的 *of* 不能改用 *for*。

### § 177. resistance

誤： We must offer *resistance toward* injustice.

正： We must offer *resistance to* injustice

譯： 我們必須反抗不公。

【講解】 *resistance* 後接 *to* 不接 *toward*。

§ 178. pride

誤: He has a *pride of* his wealth.

正: He has a *pride in* his wealth.

譯: 我以財自傲。

【講解】形容詞 *proud* 後雖接 *of*, 名詞 *pride* 後却接 *in*.

§ 179. confidence

誤: I place no *confidence on* him.

正: I place no *confidence in* him.

譯: 我不信任他。

【講解】*confidence* 後接 *in* 不接 *on*。上面的錯誤也許由 *place* 這字而起, 因為通常我們總說 *place something on something* 的。

## 練習 (41)

把下面錯用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. They are in need for relief.
2. The King has great influence on his people.
3. It is difficult to see the motives of their actions.
4. The demand of rice is not so great at present.
5. I put entire confidence on them.

6. They have offered resistance against their enemies' attacks.
7. He takes pride of his work.
8. You have no excuse for being idle.
9. He laid great emphasis on that point.
10. They went there in search for gold.

### 練習 (42)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. My advice has no influence — his actions.
2. There is no need — assistance.
3. The demand — gold has become great.
4. His motive — murdering the official remains a mystery (仍是一個謎).
5. She made a groundless excuse — her absence.
6. Emphasis is thrown — the noun.
7. I am in search — a new house.
8. The troops retreated without offering resistance — the invaders.
9. He takes pride — in his new house.
10. Public confidence — him has been restored.

## III. 形容詞與過去分詞後面的介系詞

§ 180. ashamed

誤: He is not *ashamed for* doing this.

正: He is not *ashamed of* doing this.

譯: 他不以做這事而羞恥。

【講解】 *ashamed* 後通常接 *of* 不接 *for*。

§ 181. regardless

誤: He acts *regardless for* consequences.

正: He acts *regardless of* consequences.

譯: 他行動不顧結果。

【講解】 *regardless* 後接 *of* 不接 *for*。上面的錯誤或許是由類推名詞 *regard* 而來，因為 *regard* 後通常是接 *for* 的。

§ 182. different

誤: This is *different with* that.

正: This is *different from* that.

譯: 這個與那個不同。

【講解】 在把兩件事物比較時，*different* 後接 *from* 不接 *with*。上面句中的 *this* 與 *that* 就是處於對比的位置。*with* 在 *different* 後有時也可用，但並不表示對比的



關係，例如：The case is different with him. 在這句句中的 case 並不與 him 對比，而且把 with him 放在句首也可以。又在 different 後可用 in，它所表示的是「在那一點不同」，例如：They are different in nature.

§ 183. greedy

誤：He is *greedy for* riches.

正：He is *greedy of* (或 *after*) riches.

譯：他是貪財的。

【講解】 *greedy* 後不接 *for* 而接 *of* 或 *after*。

§ 184. interested

誤：I am *interested with* this story.

正：I am *interested in* this story.

譯：我對於這故事極感興趣。

【講解】 *interested* 是個作形容詞用的過去分詞，其後接 *in* 不接 *with*。

§ 185. made

誤：The desk is *made with* wood.

正：The desk is *made of* wood.

譯：這寫字檯是木做的。

【講解】 *made* 在上面的句中是常形容詞用的過去分詞，它後面接 *of*, *of* 的受詞所表示的是材料。

§ 186. similar

誤：This is very *similar with* that.

正：This is very *similar to* that.

譯： 這個很與那個相似。

【講解】 在把兩件事物比較時，*similar* 後應接 *to*，不應接 *with*。*similar* 後也可接 *in* 以表示「在那一點相似」，例如：*They are similar in appearance.*

§ 187. equal

誤： *Japan is equal with France in size.*

正： *Japan is equal to France in size.*

譯： 日本與法國大小相等。

【講解】 在把兩件事物比較時，*equal* 後應接 *to*，不應接 *with*，它後面所接的 *in* 是表示「在那一點相等」。

§ 188. proud

誤： *He is proud abo it his success.*

正： *He is proud of his success.*

譯： 他以他的成功而自傲。

誤： *I am proud for knowing you.*

正： *I am proud of knowing you.*

譯： 我以認識你爲榮。

【講解】 *proud* 不論它作「驕傲」解或作「光榮」解，其後總接 *of* 而不接 *about* 或 *for*。

§ 189. confident

誤： *He is confident in success.*

正： *He is confident of success.*

譯： 他確信成功。

【講解】 *confident* 後接 *of*, 不接 *in* 上面的錯誤或許由犯者類推 *confidence* 而來, 因為 *confidence* 後面是接 *in* 的。

§ 190. independent

誤: He is *independent on* your help.

正: He is *independent of* your help.

譯: 他不倚賴你的幫助。

【講解】 *independent* 後接 *of*, 不接 *on*. 上面的錯誤或許由犯者類推 *depend*, *dependent*, *dependence* 等字而來, 因為這些字都接 *on* 是不接 *of*.

§ 191. indifferent

誤: He is *indifferent with* this matter.

正: He is *indifferent to* this matter.

譯: 他對這事冷淡。

【講解】 *indifferent* 後接 *to*, 不接 *with*.

練習 (43)

把下面誤用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. She dresses regardless for expense.
2. My plan is different with yours.
3. This is made with paper.
4. Japan is not equal with China in man power (人力).

5. He is not interested with my report.
6. The two officials are widely different from each other in education.
7. They are very proud about their victory.
8. He is indifferent with heat.
9. They are independent on each other.
10. Both the government and the people are confident in the ultimate victory (最後勝利)
11. They are similar with each other in style.
12. Some people are greedy after wealth.
13. I am ashamed for your conduct.
14. The teacher is very proud for your success in the examination.
15. Children are dependent on their parents.

### 練習 (44)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. There is nothing to be ashamed —.
2. He bribed (行賄) the judge (法官) regardless — law.
3. Chinese is entirely different — English.
4. It is entirely a different thing — Russia.
5. Merchants (商人) are greedy — gains.
6. I am interested — the study of English.

7. This box is made — wood.
8. Your look is similar — mine.
9. Shanghai is not equal — Nanking in military importance (軍事的重要).
10. I am proud — my country.
11. Are you confident — our success?
12. He is independent — his father.
13. Some people are indifferent — international affairs (國際事件).
14. His dependence — others is a shame to him.
15. He is proud — having passed the examination.

#### IV. 動詞後面的介系詞

##### § 192. begin

誤: We *began from* the second chapter.

正: We *began with* the second chapter.

譯: 我們從第二章開始。

【講解】 *began* 後有時接介系詞，有時不接介系詞，如接介系詞必接 *with*，不接 *from*。我們可以說 *We began the second chapter*，也可以說 *We began with the second chapter*，但不可說 *We began from the second chapter*。 *We began the second chapter* 的意思

是「我們開始(讀)第二章」; We began with the second chapter 的意思是「我們從第二章(讀)起」。

§ 193. start

誤: I will soon *start to* Hangchow.

正: I will soon *start for* Hangchow.

譯: 我不久要動身到杭州去。

【講解】 *start* 作「動身往……去」解時，其後應用 *for*，不應用 *to*。

§ 194. leave

誤: He has *left* here *to* Hankow.

正: He has *left* here *for* Hankow.

譯: 他已離開這地到漢口去了。

【講解】 作「離開…到…去」解的 *leave* 其後應接 *for*，不應接 *to*。

§ 195. sail

誤: The ship *sailed to* America last week.

正: The ship *sailed for* America last week.

譯: 這船上星期駛到美國去。

【講解】 「駛到…去」應該是 *sail for*，不是 *sail to*。

§ 196. agree

誤: I *agree with* your proposal.

正: I *agree to* your proposal.

譯: 我贊成你的提議。

【講解】作「表同意」解的 agree 如果對人 (person) 而言，後面用 with，如果對提議，計劃，決定等而言，後面應用 to，不應用 with。

§ 197. compare

誤：The earth may be *compared with* a ball.

正：The earth may be *compared to* a ball.

譯：這地球可以比作一個皮球。

【講解】compare 後用 with，作「與…相比」解；如果原意是「比作…」，那末後面就應該用 to，不應該用 with。

§ 198. marry

誤：She was *married with* Liang.

正：She was *married to* Liang.

譯：她嫁給梁。

【講解】marry 後接 to，不接 with。

§ 199. congratulate

誤：I *congratulate you for* your success.

正：I *congratulate you on* your success.

譯：我恭賀你成功。

【講解】congratulate 是及物動詞，那受詞是表示被賀者，在它受詞後的介系詞總是 on，on 所表示的就是可賀的事。

§ 200. rejoice

誤: I rejoice for your success.

正: I rejoice at your success.

譯: 我以你的成功而欣喜。

【講解】rejoice 後接 at 或 over, 不接 for. 有時它也接 in, 不過是指自己的事而言, 例如: I rejoice in my own success.

§ 201. touch

誤: I touched about the subject.

正: I touched on the subject.

譯: 我述及這問題。

【講解】touch 作「述及」或「談到」解時, 其後接 on 或 upon, 不接 about. 上面的錯誤或許是由犯者類推 speak about 而來。

## 練習 (45)

把下面錯用的介系詞改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. When will you leave China to England?
2. We all agree with your suggestion.
3. His eloquence (口才) may be compared with a fast-flowing river.
4. In the course of our conversation I touched about political matters.
5. Let us begin from this song.



6. He will not start to Shanghai until three o'clock in the afternoon.
7. We shall sail to Japan next week.
8. She was married with a general.
9. They congratulated him for his graduation.
10. I rejoiced over the good news.

### 練習 (46)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. Which shall I begin — ?
2. I came after he had started — Nanking.
3. All have left — the capital.
4. I don't think the ship will sail — Java.
5. I cannot agree — this plan.
6. Compared — the sun, the earth is very small.
7. He is going to marry his daughter — rich man.
8. Nobody congratulated him — his promotion.
9. He rejoiced — his aunt's arrival.
10. He never touched — political affairs in his speeches.

### § 202. fix

誤： He *fixed* his mind *at* this subject.

正: He *fixed* his mind on this subject.

譯: 他專心在這個問題上。

【講解】 *fix* 作及物動詞用，並作「集注」解時，其後接 *on*，不接其他介系詞（參閱 § 165）。

### § 103 concentrate

誤: He *emcentrated* all his energies at this problem.

正: He *concentrated* all his energies on this problem.

譯: 他把所有精力集中在這個問題上。

【講解】 *concentrate* 作「集注」解而其受詞為 *power*, *mind*, *attention* 及其他類似的字時，其所接的介系詞應該是 *on*，不是 *at* 或 *to*。但我們說 *to concentrate troops at a certain point*, *to concentrate ammunition in one place*（參閱 § 165）。

### § 204. join

誤: He *joined with* our conversation.

正: He *joined in* our conversation.

正: He *joined* our conversation.

譯: 他參加我們的談話。

【講解】 *join* 有「參加」的含義時，其後接 *in* 不接 *with*。有時它後面接 *in* 與不接介系詞均可，但如果表示被參加的事的字是個 *verbal noun*，那就非接 *in* 不可，例

如：我們可說 I joined in doing it, 但不可說 I joined doing it.

§ 205. attach

誤： The flag is *attached with* a pole.

正： The flag is *attached to* a pole.

譯： 這旗掛在竿上。

【講解】 attach 後面接 to, 不接 with. 同樣地, 它後面可接副詞 hereto (=to this), 不可接副詞 herewith (=with this).

§ 203. inquire

- |   |    |   |
|---|----|---|
| { | a. | 誤： The police will <i>inquire about</i> the cause of his death. |
|   |    | 正： The police will <i>inquire into</i> the cause of his death.  |
|   |    | 譯： 警察將查究他的死因。   |

【講解】 inquire about 作「探問」解, 如果原意是「查究」, 那末就應該說 inquire into.

- |   |    |   |
|---|----|---|
| { | b. | 誤： He <i>inquired about</i> my sick father. |
|   |    | 正： He <i>inquired after</i> my sick father. |
|   |    | 譯： 他問候我的生病的父親。                              |

【講解】 inquire about 沒有問候的含義, 「問候」應該是 inquire after.

§ 207. charge

- a. { 誤: Please *charge* that *on my account*.  
 正: Please *charge* that *to my account*.  
 譯: 請把它記入我的帳裏。

【講解】「記入我（你，他）的帳裏」這句話中的 *charge* 後面應接 *to*，不應接 *on*；用 *put* 代 *charge* 時也接 *to*。上面的錯誤或由犯者類推 *on account*（暫記帳上，作為分期付款）這句成語而來。

- b. { 誤: He has been *charged* for theft.  
 正: He has been *charged* with theft.  
 譯: 他被控行竊。

【講解】*charge* 作「控告」，「歸罪」解時，其後接 *with*，不接其他介系詞。

§ 208. suffer

- 誤: He is *suffering in* a fever.  
 正: He is *suffering from* a fever.  
 譯: 他患熱病。

【講解】*suffer from* 作「因…受痛苦」解，這個 *from* 不能改用 *in*。

§ 209. arrive

- 誤: He *arrived at China* several days ago.  
 正: He *arrived in China* several days ago.  
 譯: 他在兩三天前到中國。

【講解】 arrive 後可接 at 也可接 in 以表示「達於」的意思。對於城市，at 或 in 都可用，但對較小的市鎮或地方，以用 at 爲較普通。對於省，州，國家，洲等，則應用 in, 用 at 就不妥。

### 練習 (47)

把下面錯用的介系詞改正，不錯的不必改：—

1. No country joined with Japan's protest.
2. They will inquire about (查究) the trouble.
3. He suffers greatly in the heat.
4. He arrived in London long ago.
5. We should concentrate our attention to our work.
6. Something is attached with the letter.
7. We inquired after our teacher.
8. He fixed his eyes at the picture.
9. They charged the expenses on his account.
10. We charged him for dishonesty.

### 練習 (48)

把適當的介系詞填在下面的空格：—

1. We should fix our attention — our studies.
2. Industries (工業) are concentrated — Shanghai.
3. Shall we join — their work?

4. A picture is attached — it.
5. I inquired of him — my luggage.
6. I inquired — his health.
7. — whose account shall we charge this?
8. The teacher charged him — cheating.
9. She is suffering — a severe headache.
10. I arrived — school safe and sound.

## V. 必要的介系詞的省去

### § 210. ask for

誤： He *asked* me a book.

正： He *asked* me *for* a book.

譯： 他向我要一本書。

【講解】 ask 有「要求」的含義時，後面的 for 不可省去。

### § 211. belong to

誤： This books *belongs* you.

正： This book *belongs to* you.

譯： 這書屬於你。

【講解】 belong 後必須接 to. 這個 to 相當於中文的「於」，但有些人只說「這書屬你」而把「於」字省去，因而說英語時也把 to 字不知不覺省去了。

§ 212. insist on (upon)

誤: Do you *in:ist* it?

正: Do you *iasist upon* it?

譯: 你堅持這事麼?

【講解】 *insist* 後必須接 *on* 或 *upon*. 中文的「堅持」後面沒有相當於 *on* 的字, 因而犯者用 *insist* 時也就把 *on* 或 *upon* 不知不覺省去了。

§ 213. reply to

誤: I did not *reply* him.

正: I did not *reply to* him.

譯: 我不答覆他。

【講解】 *answer* 作動詞用時, 其後接 *to* 與將 *to* 省去均可。 *reply* 後面的 *to* 則不可省去。

§ 214. amount to

誤: Your debt *amounts* one thousand dollars.

正: Your debt *amounts to* one thousand dollars.

譯: 你的債總計一千元。

【講解】 *amount* 是個不及物動詞, 它後面總接 *to*.

§ 215. look upon (或 on), look at

a. 誤: We *look* them as heroes.

正: We *look upon* them as heroes.

譯: 我們視他們為英雄。

【講解】 look 有 regard (視作) 的含義時，它後面的 upon 或 on 絕不能省去。

- b. { 誤: He is *looking* a picture.  
       正: He is *looking at* a picture.  
       譯: 他在看一張圖畫。

【講解】 look 作「看」解時，其後面的 at 不能省去。

§ 216. listen to

誤: Let us *listen* his speech.

正: Let us *listen to* his speech.

譯: 讓我們聽他的演講。

【講解】 hear 後面可不接介系詞，listen 後面則必須接介系詞 to。

§ 217. attend to

誤: He seldom *attends* his studies.

正: He seldom *attends to* his studies.

譯: 他很少專心於他的學業。

【講解】 attend 作「出席」解時，它是一個及物動詞，後面不接介系詞。如果它作「注意」，「專心於」，「從事於」等解時，它後面的 to 不能省去（參閱 § 79）。

§ 218. wait for

誤: Please *wait* me at the door.

正: Please *wait for* me at the door.

譯: 請在門口等我。



【講解】 *await* 與 *wait* 同作「等候」解，但 *await* 後不接介系詞，*wait* 後面則接介系詞 *for*。

§ 219. laugh at

誤：Don't *laugh* him.

正：Don't *laugh at* him.

譯：不要笑他。

【講解】 *laugh* 作「譏笑」解時，它後面的 *at* 不能省去。

§ 220. consist of

誤：The party *consists* fifty men.

正：The party *consists of* fifty men.

譯：這隊有五十個人。

【講解】 *consist* 作「由…組合而成」解，其後接 *of*。有的字典把它譯作「包括」，因而有的人就誤認它為及物動詞而把 *of* 省去。

練習 (49)

把下面誤省的介系詞補填進去：一

1. What are you looking?
2. He insists the fact.
3. I wait my father's arrival.
4. He has not yet attended his business.
5. Whom are you waiting?

6. Water consists two elements.
7. They laughed the old lady.
8. They listened the music.
9. Our expenditure amounts three hundred dollars.
10. They look him as an enemy.
11. These pictures belong my brother.
12. He replied the protest (抗議).
13. He came to ask a loan.
14. The hill consists earth and stones.
15. I am going to attend the meeting.
16. He insists my coming.
17. Let us go to hear the band (樂隊) playing.
18. It amounts nothing.
19. I answered the letter by return post.
20. He laughed me for my rustic manners (鄉氣).

## VI. 不必要的介系詞的插入

### § 221. tell

誤: I cannot *tell to* you.

正: I cannot *tell* you.

譯: 我不能告訴你。

【講解】在 *tell* 與它的受詞中間不應插入 *to*。如果它同時有直接受詞與間接受詞，而間接受詞置於直接受詞

之前，這個 *to* 亦不應插入，如：I am going to tell you a story. 倘直接受詞置於間接受詞之前，那直接受詞之後就須接一個 *to*，如：You must tell the truth to me.

### § 222. obey

誤： He *obeyed to* his parents.

正： He *obeyed* his parents.

譯： 他服從他的父母。

【講解】 *obey* 作及物動詞用時，在它與受詞中間不應插用 *to*。上面誤句的犯者以爲名詞 *obedience* 後接 *to*，所以誤認 *obey* 也應接用 *to* 了。

### § 223. order

誤： He *ordered for* my dismissal.

正： He *ordered* my dismissal.

譯： 他命令我的革退。

【講解】 *order* 作及物動詞用時，在它與受詞中間不能插用任何介系詞。

### § 224. await

誤： I *await for* your answer.

正： I *await* your answer.

譯： 我等你的回覆。

【講解】 *wait* 後接 *for*，*await* 後則不應接任何介系詞，但學習英語者中往往有在 *await* 後不應插用 *for* 而插

用 for 的，也有在 wait 後應接用 for 而不接用 for 的，這些都是不對的（參閱 § 218）。

### § 225. leave

誤：When did you *leave from* that place?

正：When did you *leave* that place?

譯：你在何時離開那地？

【講解】leave 作「自…離開」解時，是一個及物動詞，後面不應接任何介系詞。把它誤用的人往往在它後面加個 from，病原或許在於中文中的「自」或「從」這兩個字。例如：上面那句話的中文中可加個「從」字而成「你在什麼時候從那地離開」，因而在說英文時，不知不覺也把 from 用進去了。

### § 226. reach

誤：He *reached to* Shanghai last night.

正：He *reached* Shanghai last night.

譯：他昨晚到上海。

【講解】reach 作「到達某目的地」解時，後面不應插用 to。與它同義的 arrive 後面却用 at 或 in。

### § 227. follow

誤：Spring *follows to* winter.

正：Spring *follows* winter.

譯：春天隨繼冬天。

【講解】 *to* *low* 作「隨時」解時，在它與受詞中間通常不插用介系詞；*after* 雖可插，亦以避免爲妥。

§ 228. approach

誤： They *approached to* the city.

正： They *approached* the city.

譯： 他們行近這城。

【講解】 *approach* 作「行近」，或「接近」解時，在它與受詞中間不應插用 *to*。如果它有「在性質上近於」的含義時，它後面却須用 *to*，例如：His English *approaches to* perfection（他的英語漸近完美）。

§ 229. accompany

誤： I shall *accompany with* you.

正： I shall *accompany* you.

譯： 我將與你同行。

【講解】 *accompany* 是一個及物動詞，在它與受詞中間不應插用 *with* 或其他介系詞（參閱 § 101）。

§ 230. thank

誤： I *thank to* you.

誤： I *thank for* you.

正： I *thank* you.

譯： 我謝你。

【講解】 *thank* 爲一及物動詞，它後面不應接任何介系詞。

## 練習 (50)

把下面不必要的介系詞刪去：—

1. He has already approached to his destination.
2. Tell to me the whole story.
3. They thanked to me for my service.
4. She accompanied with him to the door.
5. The boy obeyed to my words.
6. They awaited for the good news.
7. The government ordered for the suspension of the meeting.
8. Day follows after night.
9. It is three years since I left from China.
10. They reached to their destination last night.
11. Tell to me all about it.
12. Soldiers must obey to orders.
13. The police ordered for the search of the house.
14. We are awaiting for his reply.
15. The troops left from the hill at daybreak.
16. The party reached to Shanghai early this morning.
17. The dog followed after his master home.
18. He has approached the village.
19. He accompanied with his parents to the theatre.
20. I will thank for you to shut the door.

§ 231. discuss

誤： They *discussed about* an important question.

正： They *discussed* an important question.

譯： 他們討論一個重要問題。

【講解】 *discuss* 是一個及物動詞，在它與受詞中間不能插用 *about* 或其他介系詞。

§ 232. consult

誤： Don't *consult with* a poor dictionary.

正： Don't *consult* a poor dictionary.

譯： 不要查閱劣的字典。

【講解】 *consult* 後接 *with* 與不接 *with* 均可，但意義有些不同。*consult with* 是「與人商議」，*consult* 後沒有 *with* 的意義是「請教」，例如： *I consult with my brother on that matter, I consulted the physician about my health.* 我們當然不能與字典商量，但我們有不明了的地方可向它「請教」而得到解釋；所以我們可以說 *consult a dictionary*，但不能說 *consult with a dictionary*。

§ 233. mention

誤： Did you *mention about* it?

正： Did you *mention* it?

譯： 你提及它麼？

【講解】 *mention* 是一個及物動詞，在它與受詞中間不應插用 *about* 或其他介系詞（參閱 § 110）。

§ 234. remember

誤: I do not *remember about it*.

正: I do not *remember it*.

譯: 我不記得它。

【講解】 *remember* 作及物動詞用時，不能在它與受詞中間插用 *about* 或其他介系詞。

§ 235. inform

誤: He *informed to* me that the teacher had resigned.

正: He *informed* me that the teacher had resigned.

譯: 他告訴我說這先生已辭職了。

【講解】 *inform* 的受詞往往是「人」(person)，就是一個代表「接受消息者」的名詞或代名詞。在它與受詞之間不能插用 *to* 或別的介系詞，但在表示「被報告的事」的名詞或代名詞前却用 *of*，例如: He *informed me of* his resignation.

§ 236. resemble

誤: I do not *resemble to* my brother.

正: I do not *resemble* my brother.

譯: 我不肖似我的兄弟。

【講解】 *resemble* 是一個及物動詞，不能在它與受詞中間用 *to* 或其他介系詞 (參閱 § 109)。



§ 237. assist

誤： He did not *assist to* me in this matter.

正： He did not *assist* me in this matter.

譯： 對這事他不幫助我。

【講解】 *assist* 作及物動詞用時，不能在它與受詞中間插用 *to* 或其他介系詞。

§ 238. rival

誤： They *rival with* each other.

正： They *rival* each other.

譯： 他們互相競爭。

【講解】 *rival* 作及物動詞用時，不能在它與受詞中間插用 *with* 或其他介系詞。

§ 239. resist

誤： We *resisted against* their attacks.

正： We *resisted* their attacks.

譯： 我們抵抗他們的攻擊。

【講解】 *resist* 作及物動詞用時，在它與受詞中間不能插用 *against* 或其他介系詞。

§ 240. oppose

誤： I *oppose to* his plan.

正： I *oppose* his plan.

譯： 我反對他的計劃。

【講解】 在 *oppose* 與受詞中間不能插用 *to*; 但過去分詞 *opposed* 後却可接 *to*, 例如: I am *opposed to* his plan.

§ 241. demand

誤: He *demanded for* the return of his book.

正: He *demanded* the return of his book.

譯: 他索還他的書。

【講解】 *demand* 是一個及物動詞, 在它與受詞中間不應接 *for* 或別的介系詞。 *demand* 當名詞用時, 後面接 *for*, 上面的錯誤, 或許由於誤會這一點而來。

練習 (51)

把下面不必要的介系詞刪去:—

1. I discussed about the matter with him.
2. I failed to mention about his success.
3. The two brothers resemble to each other.
4. Chang rivals with Li in wealth.
5. They demanded for the withdrawal of the troops.
6. Do not always consult with books.
7. My sister informed to me that her husband had left for Canton.
8. Please remember about my help.
9. He will assist to you in any way.

10. He resisted against temptation.
11. It gives me pain to oppose you.
12. The landlord demanded for the payment of the rent.
13. Who can resist against God's will?
14. They are discussing about a plan.
15. I am going to consult with my physician.
16. I forgot to mention about it.
17. He does not remember about my name.
18. I informed to my parents that I had passed the examination.
19. Did he assist to you in doing this?

## VII. 常被誤用的介系詞和複合介系詞

### § 242. on

誤： There are clouds *on* our heads.

正： There are clouds *over* our heads.

譯： 有雲在我們的頭上。

【講解】 *on* 與 *over* 都作「在…之上」解，但兩者有分別，就是 *on* 所表示的是「與某物質的面有接觸關係」，而 *over* 所表示的是「在某物質的臨空上面」。 *on* 與 *over* 的字面解釋既看不出什麼分別，因而一般初學者往往濫用較為普通的 *on* 以代 *over*，上面的錯誤就是出於這個原因。照上面誤句的解釋，雲是直接接觸頭部了，那不是笑話麼？

§ 243. at

誤: He 's *at* Chekiang.

正: He is *in* Chekiang.

譯: 他在浙江。

【講解】 *at* 用在表示「空間的點」(point of space) 的場合, *in* 用在表示「空間的廣度」(large extent of space) 的場合。浙江是一個地區廣闊的省, 上面用 *at* 代 *in*, 當然是不妥的。不過有時 *at* 與 *in* 是可以互用的, 那要看兩個空間的比較而定, 例如: 我們說 I live *at* the North Gate *in* Lanchi, 但說 I am *in* Chekiang, *at* Lanchi. 在第一句中我們說 *in* Lanchi, 因為 Lanchi 與 North Gate 比起來是一個較廣大的地方; 在第二句中我們說 *at* Lanchi, 因為 Lanchi 與 Chekiang 比起來是一個「點」。

§ 244. in

a. { 含糊: He will come *in* four days.  
明瞭: He will come *within* four days.  
譯: 他將在四天以內來。

【講解】 在時間上, *in* 所表示的是「經過…時間」(in the course of) 或「在…時間之末」(at the close of); *within* 所表示的是「在…時期以內」(in less than). He will come *in* four days 本句並不錯, 它的意思就是「他在四天後來」; 但如果原意是「他在四天以內 (不到四天) 來」, 那末用 *in* 就不妥, 而應該用 *within*.

- b. { 誤: *In* flowers I like the rose best.  
 正: *Among* flowers I like the rose best.  
 譯: 在花的中間我最喜歡玫瑰。

【講解】「在（相同體）中間」這句話應該用 *among* 來表示，不能用 *in* 來表示。

§ 245. among

- 誤: They are playing *among* the wood.  
 正: They are playing *in* the wood.  
 譯: 他們在樹林中遊戲。

【講解】在上節中說明 *in* 不能代 *among* 而用，但也有人誤把 *among* 代 *in* 而用，如上面的例句。*among* 表示混在許多相同體的中間，它後面的受詞總是複數，所以我們可以說 They are playing *among the trees*. 如果表示包攝在一個整個的體系中間，則應用 *in*，而且這個 *in* 後面的受詞總是一個單數的集合名詞 (collective noun).

§ 246. between

- 誤: The three men agree *between* themselves.  
 正: The three men agree *among* themselves.  
 譯: 這三個人在自己中間一致。

【講解】*between* 用在「兩個」或「兩方」的場合，不能代用在「兩個以上」的場合的 *among*. 英美人雖也有以 *between* 代 *among* 而用，但我們總以依照文法家所開示的話爲是。

§ 247. beside

誤: *Beside* this dictionary, he has another at home.

正: *Besides* this dictionary, he has another at home.

譯: 除了這本字典外, 他還有一本在家中。

【講解】在字形上兩字雖極相似, 但意義則完全不同。*Beside* 是「在旁」的意思, *besides* 則是「除…以外」(in addition to) 的意思, 因是 *beside* 絕不能代 *besides* 而用。

§ 248. by

a. { 誤: *By* your letter I was able to learn much about your school.  
 正: *Through* your letter I was able to learn much about your school.  
 譯: 由你的信我能得悉許多關於你校的事。

【講解】*by* 一字不能用以代替表示手段 (means) 的 *through*.

b. { 誤: I sharpen my pencil *by* a knife.  
 正: I sharpen my pencil *with* a knife  
 譯: 我用刀削我的鉛筆。

【講解】*by* 不能用以代替表動作的工具 (instrument of an action) 的 *with*.

§ 249. after

誤： He will go *after* a few days.

正： He will go *in* a few days.

譯： 他將在幾日後去。

【講解】 *after* 用於過去時期 (past space of time), 不用於將來時期 (future space of time). 如指將來時期, 則應用 *in*.

§ 250. against

誤： We must *againsi* our enemy.

正： We must *resist* our enemy.

譯： 我們必須抵禦我們的仇敵。

【講解】 *against* 不能用作動詞。與它相當的動詞是 *resist* 與 *oppose*.

§ 251. with a view to

誤： I went there *with a view to inspect* a school.

正： I went there *with a view to inspecting* a school.

譯： 我到那邊去意在視察一個學校。

【講解】 *with a view to* 這個複合介系詞中的 *to* 是一個純粹的介系詞, 不能把它當作不定詞前面的符號看待, 所以在這個複合介系詞後面不應用不定詞以替代動名詞。英美人也有在它後面用不定詞的, 但文法家認為這是陋俗

的用法，不應效仿。這個複合介系詞，我國初學英語者絕少用它，只有程度稍高者才用到它，但用時往往有上面那種錯誤。

### § 252. in spite of

誤： *In spite of he was ill*, he attended the meeting.

正： *Though he was ill*, he attended the meeting.

正： *In spite of his illness*, he attended the meeting.

譯： 你雖病而仍到會。

【講解】 *in spite of* 是介系詞片語，它的後面該接屬於受格的名詞或代名詞，如：*his illness*，不能接像 *he was ill* 那樣的子句。

### § 253. in addition to

誤： I gave the boy a book and two pencils *in addition to*.

正： I gave the boy a book and two pencils *in addition (or besides)*.

譯： 我給這孩子一本書，此外還給他兩枝鉛筆。

【講解】 *in addition to* 是複合介系詞，在 *to* 的後面必須接一個受詞，因此它不能作副詞用。與它相當的副詞是 *in addition* 與 *besides* (*besides* 作副詞與介系詞用均可)。



§ 254. owing to

誤: *Owing to he was ill, he failed to come.*

正: *Owing to his illness, he failed to come.*

正: *He failed to come because he was ill.*

譯: 他因病而不來。

【講解】 *owing to* 不能作連接詞 (conjunction) 用。與它相當的連接詞是 *because*。

## 練習 (52)

改正下面誤用的介系詞與複合介系詞: 一

1. The cliff hangs on the sea.
2. My brother is studying at England.
3. I think he will die in a week (在一週以內).
4. I have a few friends in foreigners.
5. The vice prevails among the army.
6. This is a common mistake between students.
7. I have much more beside this.
8. By the newspapers we are able to know what the world is doing.
9. We write by a pen.
10. The work will be finished after a few days.
11. They against our attacks.
12. He does everything with a view to serve his country.

13. In spite of I am not well, I will go.
14. I met some friends and other people in addition to.
15. Owing to the oil was out, the light went out.
16. We against their plan.
17. He will leave for Hangchow after a month.
18. He chopped down the tree by an axe.
19. By our class meetings we become very intimate.
20. Beside the jury (陪審官), the judge believed the prisoner to be guilty.
21. The three men divided it between themselves.
22. There is some trouble among the navy.
23. In our English lessons, this is the most interesting.
24. It is impossible for me to return it to you in three days (在三天以內).
25. I saw this at Japan.
26. The lamp hangs on the table.
27. He failed owing to he did not work hard.
28. I wrote three letters and two notes in addition to.
29. In spite of he is old, he is very healthy.
30. He labours day and night with a view to become rich.

## 第七章 連接詞 (Conjunctions)

### I. 連接詞的誤省

#### § 255. even if, even though

誤: *Even* I were in his place, I would not go.

正: *Even if* (or *though*) in his place, I would not go.

譯: 即使我處在他的地位, 我也不願去。

【講解】 *even if* 與 *even though* 是複合連接詞, 其中的 *if* 絕不能省去, 因為 *even* 是一個副詞, 不是一個連接詞 (參閱 § 126)。

#### § 256. 間接問句前的 if 與 whether

誤: I asked him could I borrow his book?

正: I asked him *whether* (or *if*) I could borrow his book?

譯: 我問他我能借他的書麼?

【講解】 間接問句 (述部動詞須在主詞之後) 須賴連接字 (connective) 去把它與主要子句連接起來。這種間接問句如果起首字是 *how*, *when*, *why* 等字則這些字就成了連接字, 如果起首沒有這些字, 則前須用 *if* 或 *whether* 以與主要子句連接。

## II. 不必要的連接詞

§ 257. though...but, although...but

誤: *Though* I am ill, *but* I must go.

正: *Though* I am ill, I must go.

譯: 我雖病也必須去。

誤: *Although* I believe it, *but* I will not act now.

正: *Although* I believe it, I will not act now.

譯: 我雖想信它, 現在卻不欲有所行動。

【講解】 *though* 或 *although* 不能與 *but* 連用。中文中我們常把「雖然」與「但是」連用, 因而一般學習英語的人也把 *though* 或 *although* 與 *but* 連用起來。但相當於 *but* 的 *yet* 可與 *though* 或 *although* 連用, 不過它也是可以省去的。

§ 258. as...so

誤: *As* it is getting late, *so* I must go now.

正: *As* it is getting late, I must go now.

正: It is getting late, *so* I must go now.

譯: 漸遲了, 現在我必須去。

【講解】 *as* 表示原因, *so* 表示結果。這兩字不應同用; 就是用了 *as* 就不用 *so*, 用了 *so* 就不用 *as*。

§ 259 that

- a. { 誤: He said *that*, "I don't understand it."  
 正: He said, "I don't understand it."  
 譯: 他就,「我不明白它」。

【講解】在直接敘述前不應用連接詞 *that*, 在間接敘述前却必須用它, 例如: He said *that* he did not understand it.

- b. { 誤: We wondered *that* when you would return.  
 正: We wondered when you would return.  
 譯: 我們不知你何時會回來。

【講解】間接問句的起首如果是 *when*, *who*, *what* 等疑問詞, 這些疑問詞就有了連接詞的功用, 故在它們前面不應再用連接詞 *that*.

§ 260. and

- a. { 誤: He is kind and polite *and* I like him very much.  
 正: He is kind and polite. I like him very much.  
 正: As he is kind and polite, I like him very much.  
 譯: 他和善而文雅, 我很喜歡他。

【講解】兩個 *and* 連用得太近, 讀起來很不合調, 而且 He is kind and polite 與 I like him very much 用

在同一句中，在思想上也缺少聯貫 (coherence)，故 *and* 應該刪去，*I like him very much* 則獨成一句。

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| { | 誤： I have an interesting book, <i>and</i> which children like to read. |
|   | b. 正： I have an interesting book, which children like to read.         |
|   | 譯： 我有一本書，孩子們喜歡讀它。  |

【講解】 上面句中的 *which* 是一個關係代名詞，它原有連接詞的功用，所以在它前面不應再用連接詞 *and*。

### 練習 (53)

把誤省的連接詞填入，把不必要的連接詞刪去，有別的錯誤也改正：—

1. Please tell me can you speak English?
2. Though he is rich, but he is not honest.
3. As he is ill, so we should not be noisy.
4. Even I were rich, I would work.
5. I do not know he is a Chinese or a Japanese.
6. The teacher said that, "Do not use *even* as a Conjunction."
7. This is a very useful dictionary, and which cost me only one dollar.
8. Although he was very poor, but he was always honest.
9. I do not know that how he did it.

10. Even it should rain, I would go.
11. The servant is honest and faithful, and his master trusts him with money.
12. As it was getting very late, we soon turned back.
13. Everyday I go to see my aunt, and who loves me very much.
14. Though he is seasick, but he must do his duties.
15. He said that, "Honesty is the best policy."

### III. 連接詞與複合連接詞的誤用

#### § 261. and

誤： I tried *and* did not succeed.

正： I tried *but* did not succeed.

譯： 我嘗試而未成功。

【講解】 *and* 有累積的含義不能用以代有反對意思的 *but*.

#### § 262. because

a. { 誤： He could not come *because* his illness.  
 正： He could not come *because of* his illness.  
 譯： 他因病不能來。

【講解】 *because* 是一個連接詞，不能用作介系詞，但它與 *of* 連用就成同意義的複合介系詞。

- b. { 誤: The reason why we study is *because* we have to.  
 正: The reason why we study is *that* we have to.  
 譯: 我們讀書的理由是我們必須讀書。

【講解】 以 *because* 起首的子句不能用於以 *reason* 為主詞的繫動詞 (*linking verb*) 之後 (參閱 § 16)。

- c. { 誤: He is not poor, *because* he lives in ease and comfort.  
 正: He is not poor, *for* he lives in ease and comfort.  
 譯: 他並不窮，因為他生活舒適。

【講解】 *because* 所表示的是原因，它不能用以代表表示推斷的理由的 *for*。

- d. { 誤: He studied very hard, *because* he might not fail in the final examination.  
 正: He studied very hard, *that* (或 *so that*, 或 *in order that*) he might not fail in the final examination.  
 譯: 他讀書很用功以期大考不會不及格。

【講解】 我們不能用表示原因的 *because* 以代表表示目的的 *that*, *so that* 或 *in order that*。



§ 263. till, until

誤： He will go *util* I come.

正： He will go *when* I come.

正： He will *not* go *until* I come.

譯： 他來時我始去（他不來我不去）。

【講解】 *until* 或 *till* 的比較確當的中文解釋是「以迄於」。從屬子句中如用 *until* 或 *till*，那末主要子句中的動詞所表示的動作或情形一定是從某一個時間起繼續到從屬子句所表示的某一時間為止。例如：He will not go *until* I come 中的 He will not go (不去) 這個情形要繼續到 I come (我來) 為止，就是說「我來」的時候「他才去」，「我不來」，「他就始終不去」。上面 He will go *until* I come 中的 *until* 的誤用是由於直譯「他等到我來時去」而來。

§ 264. unless

誤： *Unless* you do not study hard, you will fail in the examination.

正： *If* you do not study hard, you will fail in the examination.

譯： 你倘不用功讀書，你在考試時不及格。

【講解】 *unless* 作 *if not* 解，它不能用以替代 *if*。

§ 265. before

誤: *Before he did not come, I had gone.*

正: *Before he came, I had gone.*

譯: 在他來以前, 我已去了。

【講解】初學英語的人往往把 *before* 用在否定子句中, 這是不合英文的語法的。這種錯誤無疑是由於直譯中文而來, 因為中文中確有「在他未來以前」的說法。

§ 266. than

- a. { 誤: *We had hardly started than it began to rain.*  
 正: *We had hardly started when it began to rain.*  
 譯: 我剛動身天就下雨了。

【講解】在表示時間的場合上, *than* 不能代 *when* 而與 *hardly* 或 *scarcely* 連用。

- b. { 誤: *This is different than that.*  
 正: *This is different from that.*  
 譯: 這個與那個不同。

【講解】*different* 後面接介系詞 *from*, 不接連接詞 *than*。在英美人中間的確在 *different* 後面有用 *than* 的, 因而對英語有根底的國人有時也作這樣仿效。但文法學家總認這種用法不妥, 我們以不用 *than* 爲是。

§ 267. as well as

- a. { 誤: They fail in business *as well as they do not succeed in school.*  
 正: They fail in business *as well as in school.*  
 譯: 他不但在學校失敗而且在商業上也失敗。

【講解】 *as well as* 不連接實際上可省略為單字或片語的子句。但不可省略的子句却可用它連接，例如: He will like you *as well as he has liked me.*

- b. { 誤: It takes time and effort *as well as.*  
 正: It takes time and effort *as well.*  
 譯: 這事要時間也要努力。

【講解】 *as well as* 是一個複合連接詞，不能作副詞用，與它相當的副詞片語是 *as well*。

§ 268. so...that

- 誤: The car was crowded *that* we had to stand.  
 正: The car was *so* crowded *that* we had to stand.  
 譯: 車擠得使我們不得不站着。

【講解】 表示目的的子句可用 *that* 引首，例如: Men work *that* they may earn a living. 但表示結果的子句不可用 *that* 引首，換句話說與它隔離連用的副詞 *so* 不能略去。

§ 269. so that

誤: His health was bad. *So that* he was unable to work.

正: His health was bad. *Therefore* he was unable to work.

正: His health was *so bad that* he was unable to work.

譯: 他的身體不好, 不能工作。

【講解】 *so that* 不能代 *Therefore* 以引起一句獨立句。

## 練習 (54)

把下面關於連接詞的錯誤改正, 不錯的不必改:—

1. They could not leave the house because a snowstorm.
2. You are strong and I am stronger.
3. He is poor that he cannot afford to buy it.
4. He was vulgar as well as he was impolite.
5. The reason is because he has no money.
6. I will go till I receive his reply.
7. The sun must have set, because it is growing dark.
8. Unless you do not go away at once, I will send for a policeman.
9. We had scarcely left the house than it began to rain.

10. He worked hard, because he might gain a prize.
11. I had resigned before he did not inform me of the news.
12. This report is slightly different than that.
13. I like art and science as well as.
14. The letter had been addressed to the wrong house. So that it never reached me.
15. He studied very hard and failed in the examination.
16. He could not work because bad health.
17. The reason for this is because he is not honest.
18. It is going to rain, because the barometer (晴雨表) is falling.
19. He went to Paris, because he might consult the physicians there.
20. Please wait till the rain becomes lighter.
21. I shall stay there until my business is concluded.
22. Unless you are not diligent, you will not advance in learning.
23. Before he was not appointed (委任) to the post, he was a clerk.
24. He had hardly begun to speak than they interrupted (阻止) him.

25. He had scarcely heard the news when he wept aloud.
26. My plan is different than yours.
27. I like to dive as well as I am fond o swimming.
28. He spoke low that few could hear him.
29. He spoke loud that I might hear him.
30. He was not well. So that he could not go to school.

## 第八章 字序 (Order of Words)

### I. 問句中的字序

#### § 270. 沒有疑問詞的直接問句 (direct question):—

誤: *He is older than you?*

正: *Is he older than you?*

譯: 他比你老麼?

誤: *He will come tomorrow?*

正: *Will he come tomorrow?*

譯: 他明天要來麼?

【講解】在沒有助動詞的問句中，動詞須在主詞之前。在有助動詞的問句中，助動詞在主詞之前，動詞則在主詞之後。He is older than you? 和 He will come tomorrow? 這兩句問句除了一個問號外，完全是敘述句的結構。有時把敘述句的聲調提高，的確也可以把它改成問句，但這種問句可以對被問人所說的話發生疑問時可以使用，在平時發問的時候則絕對不能使用。

#### § 271. 有疑問詞的直接問句:—

誤: *How much money you have?*

正: *How much money have you?*

譯: 你有多少錢?

誤: How much money *you have* spent?

正: How much money *have you* spent?

譯: 你已化了多少錢?

【講解】在有疑問詞(如 *how, why* 等字)而無助動詞的問句中,動詞在主詞之前。在有疑問詞並有助動詞的問句中,助動詞在主詞之前,動詞則在主詞之後。

§ 272. 有 *there is, there are* 等的直接問句:—

誤: How many students *there are*?

正: How many students *are there*?

譯: 有多少學生?

【講解】在問句中, *there is, there are, there was, there were, there has been, there have been* 等片語中的 *there* 應放在動詞之後。

§ 273. 有 *do you think* 插語的直接問句:—

誤: *Do you think* which student is the best?

正: Which student *do you think* is the best?

譯: 你想那一個學生最好?

【講解】*do you think* 是一句插語,不能放在問句的句首。

§ 274. 間接問句 (indirect question):—

誤: I asked him *what was he doing*?

正: I asked him *what he was doing*?

譯: 我問他他做什麼?



【講解】 間接問句除疑問詞放在此種問句的句首外，其他單字的字序是和敘述句同樣的。

## II. 形容詞修飾詞 (Adjectival Modifier) 的位置

### § 275. 所有形容詞 my 與形容詞 dear:—

誤: *Dear my teacher.*

正: *My dear teacher.*

譯: 我的親愛的先生。

【講解】 dear 與 my 連用時，my 必在 dear 之前。

### § 276. 所有形容詞或名詞屬格 (genetive of noun) 與形容詞 all 及 both:—

誤: *His both hands were injured.*

正: *Both his hands were injured.*

譯: 他的雙手都受傷了。

誤: *Wang's all money has been stolen.*

正: *All Wang's money has been stolen.*

譯: 王所有的錢都已被竊。

【講解】 所有形容詞如 my, his, your 等或名詞屬格如 Wang's, John's 等與 all 或 both 連用時，all 或 both 必在所有形容詞或名詞屬格之前。

§ 277. 不定冠詞 a 或 an 與副詞 so

誤： I have never experienced *a so fine trip*.

正： I have never experienced *so fine a trip*.

譯： 我從來沒有經歷過這麼有趣的旅行。

【講解】 a 或 an 如與修飾形容詞的副詞 so 連用，必須放 so 所修飾的形容詞的後面。

§ 278. 不定冠詞 a 或 an 與副詞 too:—

誤： It was *a too severe punishment*.

正： It was *too severe a punishment*.

譯： 這是太嚴厲的刑罰。

【講解】 a 或 an 如與修飾形容詞的副詞 too 連用，必須放在 too 所修飾的形容詞的後面。

§ 279. 不定冠詞 a 或 an 與 such

誤： Why is he *in a such* hurry?

正： Why is he *in such a* hurry?

譯： 他爲什麼這樣急促？

【講解】 a 或 an 與 such 連用時，such 總是放在前面。

§ 280. 形容詞片語與所修飾的字:—

誤： *To become successful*, the only way is to work hard.

正： The only way to become successful is to work hard.

譯： 成功的惟一途徑是辛勤。

誤： To master English, the best way is to live with a foreign family.

正： The best way to master English is to live with a foreign family.

譯： 學通英語的最好方法是與西人家庭同住。

【講解】 照一般的規則，用作形容詞的片語總放在它們所修飾的字的後面。

### 練習 (55)

改正下面錯誤的字序：--

1. When you will come?
2. How many apples there are?
3. He is a student in your school?
4. He is reading English or Chinese?
5. What he is reading?
6. Do you think who will teach us English?
7. I cannot tell where is he going?
8. Dear my friend.
9. His both feet are bare.

10. John's all books were lost.
11. I have never seen a so good man.
12. It is a too rough game for her.
13. This game is too rough for a such child.
14. To be happy, the only way is to be contented.
15. To do it, there is no other way.
16. He is a Japanose or a Korean?
17. London is the capital of England?
18. The school will open on September 8th?
19. How many brothers he has?
20. When he will come to see you?
21. How many teachers there were in your school last year?
22. Do you think when will they come?
23. Please ask him how many hours will he teach?
24. I do not know why is he absent.
25. Liang's both parents were there yesterday.
26. My all time was spent in reading.
27. His all friends persuaded him to go.
28. I have never visited a so good school.
29. Mary is too young girl to marry.
30. I never saw a such fine sight.

### III. 副詞修飾詞 Adverbial

#### Modifier 的位置

##### § 281. also 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： He *also* will go.

正： He will *also* go.

正： He will go *also*.

譯： 他也要去。

【講解】 *also* 應放在句末或助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

##### § 282. always 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： Since its falling under England India *always* has enjoyed peace.

正： Since its falling under England India *has* *always* enjoyed peace.

譯： 自受英國統治後印度常享受和平。

【講解】 *always* 通常放在助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

##### § 283. never 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： I *never* have failed in the examinations.

正： I *have* *never* failed in the examinations.

譯： 我從未在考試失敗過。

【講解】 *never* 通常放在助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

§ 284. often 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： I *often have* said so.

正： I *have often* said so.

譯： 我曾常常這樣說。

【講解】 *often* 通常放在助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

§ 285. just 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： I *just have* finished.

正： I *have just* finished.

譯： 我剛才完畢。

【講解】 *just* 通常放在助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

§ 286. rather 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： I *rather would* take tea.

正： I *would rather* take tea.

譯： 我寧可飲茶。

【講解】 *would rather* 是一句慣用語，兩字不能顛倒。

§ 287. not 與助動詞的先後：一

誤： I *not have* seen him.

正： I *have not* seen him.

譯：我未曾見過他。

【講解】 not 應放在助動詞與動詞之間，不應放在助動詞的近前。

§ 288. not 與不定詞的 to 的先後：—

誤：The teacher told him *to not do it*.

正：The teacher told him *not to do it*.

譯：教員囑他不要做這事。

【講解】 not 應放在不定詞的 to 的前面，不應放在 to 的後面（參閱 § 90）。

§ 289. 表場所的副詞 (adverb of place) 與表時間的副詞 (adverb of time) 的先後：—

誤：I saw it *yesterday here*.

正：I saw it *here yesterday*.

譯：我昨天在這裏看見它。

誤：We went *in the morning to school*.

正：We went *to school in the morning*.

譯：我們早晨到學校去。

【講解】 中文中表時間的語辭雖然往往放在表場所的語辭前面，英文中表時間的副詞通常却放在表場所的副詞的後面。

§ 290. 副詞修飾詞與它所修飾的動詞及其受詞：—

誤：He called *loudly* the waiter.

正： He called the waiter *loudly*.

譯： 我重聲叫侍者。

誤： I copied *from him* the lecture notes.

正： I copied the lecture notes *from him*.

譯： 我從他的地方抄錄演講(指教室中的講辭)摘記。

【講解】 照一般的規則，副詞修飾詞不應放在動詞和其受詞的中間。但也有例外，如： I find *in your sentences* some mistakes which you should not make. 在這句句中，*in your sentences* 之所以放在動詞與受詞之間是爲了要使語意不使讀者誤解 (參閱 § 25)。

### § 291. 動詞副詞複合詞 (verb-adverb combination) 中的副詞的位置：—

誤： I want to see *off you* at the station.

正： I want to see *you off* at the station.

譯： 我要在車站送你。

【講解】 動詞副詞複合詞如有代名詞作受詞，副詞應放在該受詞後面。這種複合詞除了 *see off* 外，還有 *make out*, *put on*, *take off*, *write down*, *carry away*, *send off* 等。

### 練習 (56)

把下面誤置的副詞修飾詞改正：—

1. I also am writing a letter.

2. You always should be just.



3. He never will succeed.
4. A storm often is followed by a calm.
5. They just have arrived.
6. I rather would not drink anything.
7. His father told him to not play football.
8. You will be by April in London.
9. I asked them how much they paid usually the beginners.
10. Please write down it.
11. I must send off it.
12. Don't carry away it.
13. Foreigners do not visit very often one another.
14. He left last month for England.
15. I not have written the sentences.
16. This point often is ignored.
17. I just am coming.
18. One never can master English without learning its idioms.
19. People always will laugh at you.
20. They also are preparing their lessons.

#### IV. 關於字序的其他錯誤

§ 292. 用 nor 連接的子句：—

誤： He did not know what to do, *nor I did*

正: He did not know what to do, *nor did I*.

譯: 他不知道做什麼, 我也不知道。

誤: The lady could not speak English, *nor she could understand it*.

正: The lady could not speak English, *nor could she understand it*.

譯: 該婦人不能說英語, 也不能懂它。

【講解】兩個子句如用 *nor* 連接, 那以 *nor* 起首的子句須作倒轉排列 (*inverted order*), 就是要把動詞放在主詞之前 (如有助動詞, 則助動詞放在主詞之前, 動詞則放在主詞之後)。

§ 293. 副詞修飾詞放在句首以加強語勢的句子或子句: 一

誤: *Never he would go there again*.

正: *Never would he go there again*.

譯: 他不再去了。

誤: *Neither I will go*.

正: *Neither will I go*.

譯: 我也不去。

誤: *Not only he was polite, he was also very kind*.

正: *Not only was he polite, he was also very kind*.

譯: 他不但文雅有禮, 而且很和善。

誤： *By no means he was eager to stay.*

正： *By no means was he eager to stay.*

譯： 他絕不切望留住。

【講解】 副詞修飾詞如放在句首以加強子句或獨立句的語勢，該子句或獨立句必須作倒轉排列。*He would never go there again* 是一句平常的句子，它裏面的主詞與動詞的次序只須照正常的字序排列；但如果要把這句話的語氣加強，則副詞 *never* 應放在句首，同時再把主詞放在助動詞與動詞之間。*He was by no means eager to stay* 也是一句平常的句子，如要把它加強，應把 *by no means* 放在句首，同時再把主詞放在動詞之前。

#### § 294. 人稱代名詞的次序：一

誤： *Neither I nor my companions could understand.*

正： *Neither my companions nor I could understand.*

譯： 我的同道與我都不明白。

【講解】 各人稱代名詞連用時的次序是：第二人稱，第三人稱，第一人稱（參閱 §24）。

#### § 295. 一般的修飾詞 (modifiers in general)：一

誤： *The more I was earnest, the more my speeches were effective.*

正: The *more earnest* I was, the *more effective* my speeches became.

譯: 我愈懇切, 我的演辭愈有實效。

誤: *Almost* he succeeded in the examination.

正: He *almost succeeded* in the examination.

譯: 他考試幾乎成功了。

【講解】各種修飾詞, 應儘量放在它們所修飾的字的最近處。

§ 296. 慣用的集合詞:—

誤: Here is *butter and bread*.

正: Here is *bread and butter*.

譯: 這裏是麵包與奶油。

誤: *Women and men* are equal before the law.

正: *Men and women* are equal before the law.

譯: 男女在法律前是平等的。

【講解】bread and butter, men and women, ladies and gentlemen, rich and poor, more or less, slow and steady, knives and forks, cup and saucer 這些集合詞中的單字的次序已經固定, 我們不能隨便顛倒, 顛倒了就不合習慣。

練習 (57)

把下面字序的錯誤改正:—

1. I could not go on, nor I could turn back.

2. Not until war is outlawed there will real peace.
3. Never again I will make such a trip alone.
4. Only when one understands a word one should try to use it.
5. Only for a week I can attend these lectures.
6. Scarcely we had reached home when it began to rain.
7. I cannot solve the problem, nor he can.
8. Not before counting the cost you should begin to build.
9. He cannot read, nor he can speak distinctly.
10. The man is not here whom you speak of yesterday.
11. We almost had no money left.
12. One should be steady and slow.
13. By no means I will consent.
14. Neither his brother can swim.
15. I stood still, nor he moved.

## 第九章 常被混用的字語

### § 297. ignorant 與 stupid

誤： Though well educated, he is very *ignorant*.

正： Though well educated, he is very *stupid*.

譯： 他雖受過很好的教育，他是很笨的。

【講解】 *ignorant* 作「缺乏知識」解，它沒有「天生笨」的意義。「天生笨」的英語是 *stupid*，但一般學生往往把 *ignorant* 代 *stupid* 而用，原因或許在於一般的英漢字典或一般英語教員把 *ignorant* 作「愚笨」兩字解（*ignorant* 當然有「愚」的意義，但「笨」的意義是絕對沒有的）。

### § 298. wise 與 clever

誤： He is a very *wise* child.

正： He is a very *clever* child.

譯： 他是一個聰明的孩子。

【講解】 *wise* 作「有智慧的」解，它所指的「智慧」是由後天得來的，就是從學問經驗中得來的。*clever* 作「天生聰明的」解，它所指的「聰明」是由先天得來的。一般學生往往把 *wise* 代 *clever* 而用，原因在於一般字典或教員把兩字都作「聰明的」解。

### § 299. find 與 look for

誤： I *am finding* the lost book.

正： I *am looking for* the lost book.

譯：我在尋找失去的書。

【講解】 find 含有「尋着」的意義；look for 是「找尋」的意思。我國學生常把前者代後者用，那是錯誤的。

與 look for 同義的有 seek 與 search for.

§ 300. because 與 for

誤：He is not poor, *because* he lives in ease and comfort.

正：He is not poor, *for* he lives in ease and comfort.

譯：他並不窮，因為他生活舒適。

【講解】 參閱 §262 c.

§ 301. consult with 與 consult

誤：Don't *consult with* a poor dictionary.

正：Don't *consult* a poor dictionary.

譯：不要查問劣的字典。

【講解】 參閱 §232.

§ 302. across 與 cross

誤：They put a net *cross* the river.

正：They put a net *across* the river.

譯：他們撒一個網從河的一邊到另一邊。

【講解】 參閱 §99.

§ 303. advice 與 advise

誤： I *advised* him to go.

正： I *advised* him to go.

譯： 我勸他去。

【講解】 *advice* 是名詞，不能用以代動詞的 *advise*。

§ 304. few 與 a few

誤： The essay is good; it has *a few* mistakes.

正： The essay is good; it has *few mistakes*.

譯： 這文章好；它的錯處不多。

【講解】 *a few* 作「有幾個」解，側重肯定的意味；*few* 作「沒有幾個」解，側重否定的意味。It has *a few mistakes* 的意思是「它有幾個錯誤」——這是肯定的說法。It has *few mistakes* 的意思是「它的錯誤不多」——這是否定的說法。文章有幾個錯誤而說文章好是不合理的，文章的錯誤不多才能算得好文章。

§ 305. little 與 a little

誤： He is poor, for he has *a little* money.

正： He is poor, for he has *little* money.

譯： 他窮，因為他的錢不多。

誤： Since he has money, he ought to give the poor *little*.

正： Since he has money, he ought to give the poor *a little*.



譯：他既有錢，他該送一點給窮人。

【講解】 little 的用法相當於 few, [little 指量(quantity), 或程度(degree)而言, few 指數(number)而言]; a little 的用法相當於 a few (參閱 §304)。

### § 306. often 與 always

誤： I *always* saw him.

正： I *often* saw him.

譯：我時常看見他。

【講解】 always 是 all the time (時時刻刻) 或 on all occasions (每次) 的意思; often 是 many times (屢屢往往) 的意思。我國往往把 always 代 often 用。照 I always saw him 的解釋, [我是無時無刻不看見他了], 那在事實上是是不可能的。但說 I always saw him on Sundays 是對的, 因為 [每星期總是看見他] 在事實上是可能的。

### § 307. nearly 與 almost

誤： I have made *nearly* no mistakes.

正： I have made *almost* no mistakes.

譯：我幾乎沒有犯錯誤。

【講解】 在肯定句中, nearly 與 almost 可以換用, 例如: I have nearly finished 與 I have almost finished 是一樣的。在否定句中, 兩字的用法就不同。almost 可形容 no, none 等否定詞, 但不能被它們形容。反之 nearly 可被否定詞形容, 而不能形容否定詞。我們可以說 I have

*not nearly* finished, 但不能說 *I have not almost* finished. 我們可以說 *I have made almost no* mistakes, 但不能說 *I have made nearly no* mistakes.

§ 308. arise 與 rouse

誤: Let us *arise* our countrymen.

正: Let us *rouse* our countrymen.

譯: 讓我們喚醒我們的鄉下人。

【講解】 *arise* 作「起身」,「發生」等解, 不能用以代作「喚醒」解的 *rouse*.

§ 309. rise 與 raise

誤: We must *rise* our hands before we speak.

正: We must *raise* our hands before we speak.

譯: 在說話前我們必須舉手。

【講解】 *rise* 作「起身」解, 不能用以代作「舉起」解的 *raise*.

練習 (58)

把括弧中適當的字填在空格處:—

1. I met (few, a few) — people there.
2. As he has (few, a few) — friends, he cannot find a good job.
3. The ship sailed (across, cross) — the Pacific.

4. What would you (advice, advise) — me to do?
5. They gave bad (advice, advise) — to him.
6. I am rather (stupid, ignorant) — on that subject.
7. He is too (stupid, ignorant) — to learn this.
8. Though a naughty boy, he is very (clever, wise) — learning mathematics.
9. This old man is very (wise, clever) — for he can solve many difficult problems for us.
10. The sun (rises, raises) — in the east and sets in the west.
11. He (rose, raised) — his hat.
12. He (found, looked for) — a man concealed under the bed.
13. I am (looking for, finding) — a house.
14. I give you this, (because, for) — I love you.
15. He must be honest, (for, because) — he is loved by all.
16. I will not buy this, because I have (a little, little) — money in hand.
17. He (consulted, consulted with) — his physician about his health.
18. He (often, always) — comes to see me.

19. We have received (nearly, almost) — no news.
20. The fire (arose, roused) — the people from their sleep.

§ 310. very 與 much

- \* 誤: I was *very* surprised at the news.  
正: I was *much* surprised at the news.  
譯: 我很驚異這消息。

【講解】 參閱 § 128—b.

§ 311. before 與 ago

- 誤: The general died three weeks *before*.  
正: The general died three weeks *ago*.  
譯: 這將軍三星期前死去。

【講解】 參閱 § 129.

§ 312. ashamed 與 shameful

- 誤: Such conduct is *ashamed*.  
正: Such conduct is *shameful*.  
譯: 這種行爲是可恥的。
- 誤: I felt a little *shameful* of what I had said.  
正: I felt a little *ashamed* of what I had said.  
譯: 我對我所說過的有點覺得慚愧。

【講解】 *shameful* 有「引起羞恥的感覺」(causing

shame) 的含義, ashamed 是「覺得羞恥」(feeling shame) 的意義, 兩字不能混用。

§ 313. beside 與 besides

誤: *Beside* this dictionary, he has another at home.

正: *Besides* this dictionary, he has another at home.

譯: 除了這本字典外, 他還有一本在家中。

【講解】 參閱 § 247.

§ 314. large 與 great

誤: General Feng Yu-hsiang is a *large* man.

正: General Feng Yu-hsiang is a *great* man.

譯: 馮玉祥是個偉人。

【講解】 *great* 與 *large* 雖都作「大」解, 但 *great* 有時有精神方面的含義, *large* 則沒有。*large* 不能作「精神偉大」解, 故「偉人」不能譯作 *large man*, 而應譯作 *great man*.

§ 315. lend 與 borrow

誤: I *lent* the money from him.

正: I *borrowed* the money from him.

譯: 這錢我向他借來。

【講解】 *lend* 是「借出」的意思，*borrow* 是「借進」的意思，兩字是相反的，不能混用。

§ 316. childish 與 childlike

誤：Such amusements are *childlike*.

正：Such amusements are *childish*.

譯：這種娛樂是有雅氣的。

【講解】 *childlike* 指具有小孩的優點而言，*childish* 指具有小孩的缺點而言，兩字不能混用。

§ 317. climate 與 weather

誤：The *climate* was very hot last month.

正：The *weather* was very hot last month.

譯：上月天氣很熱。

【講解】 *climate* 指一般的氣候而言，*weather* 指某一時期的天氣而言，兩字不能混用。

§ 318. depart 與 part

誤：I *parted* from my home.

正：I *departed* from my home.

譯：我離開我家。

【講解】 *part* 是「分離」的意思，*depart* 是「離去」的意思。我們可以說 I *departed* from my home, 也可以說 I *departed* from my friends. 我們可以說 I *parted* from my friends, 但不能說 I *parted* from my home.

§ 319. die 與 dead

誤： He is *died*.

正： He is *dead*.

譯： 你是死了。

【講解】 *die* 是動詞，*dead* 是形容詞，在應用 *dead* 的時候，不應用 *die*。

§ 320. invent 與 discover

誤： Marconi *discovered* the wireless telegraph.

正： Marconi *invented* the wireless telegraph.

譯： 馬可尼發明無線電報。

【講解】 *discover* 表示「發見已經存在的東西」的意思，不能用以代表「明明向來沒有的東西」的意義的 *invent*。

§ 321. due to 與 owing to

誤： We must use umbrellas *due to* the bad weather.

正： We must use umbrellas *owing to* the bad weather.

譯： 因為天氣不好，我們必須用傘。

【講解】 *due to* 與 *owing to* 在意義是一樣的，但用法不同。*due to* 有形容詞的意味，它與 *to* 後面的受詞連用總是當 subjective complement 用的，如： our use of

umbrellas is *due to the bad weather*, His absence is *due to a cold*. Owing to 與 to 的受詞連用可當 participial phrase 用, 也可當 subjective complement 用, 如: *Owing to the long drought*, the crops have failed (當 participial phrase 用), His success is *owing to good luck* (當 subjective complement 用)。

### § 322. one another 與 each other

誤: Some twins do not resemble *one another*.

正: Some twins do not resemble *each other*.

譯: 有幾對雙生不相似。

【講解】 *one another* 指兩個以上而言, 不能用以代指兩個的 *each other* 而用。

### 練習 (59)

把括弧中的適當字或片語填在空格處:—

1. I am (very, much) — astonished at what you tell me.
2. They found gold there and were (very, much) — pleased.
3. He started but a moment (ago, before) — .
4. I last saw him three weeks (ago, before) — .
5. I am (shameful, ashamed) — of your conduct.
6. This is a (shameful, ashamed) — conduct.



7. (Beside, Besides)——advising, he gave them money.
8. He **is** standing (beside, besides) —— her.
9. He is a (great, large) —— soldier.
10. That was a (large, great) —— entertain ment.
11. From whom did you (lend, borrow) —— this book?
12. I never (borrowed, lent) —— money from others.
13. I don't like his (childish, childlike) —— manners.
14. His (childlike, childish) —— spirit is admirable.
15. How do you like the (climate, weather) —— of China?
16. The (climate, weather) —— was so bad that I could not come.
17. He (departed, parted) —— from Shanghai last evening.
18. I am sorry to (depart, part) —— from my parents.
19. The baby was born (dead, died) ——.
20. The boy (was dead, died) —— last night.
21. America was (discovered, invented) —— by Columbus.

22. By whom was the electric lamp (invented, discovered) — ?
23. The three brothers helped (one another, each other) — .
24. The two boys loved (each other, one another) — .
25. (Owing to, Due to) — ill health, he could not work.
26. He could not come (owing to, due to) — his illness.
27. (Owing to, Due to) — repeated failures, he made no further attempt.
28. (Owing to, Due to) — this difficulty, they failed in their attempt.
29. His success was (due to, owing to) — perseverance.
30. His illness is (due to, owing to) — weather.

§ 323. elder brother 與 older brother

誤: My *older brother* is twenty years old. I am seventeen years old.

正: My *elder brother* is twenty years old. I am seventeen years old.

譯: 我的哥哥廿歲。我十七歲。

【講解】「哥哥」是 *elder brother*, 不是 *older brother*.

older brother 是指兩個 brothers (或者是哥哥, 或者是弟弟) 中的較長的一個而言。

§ 324. every one 與 everyone

誤: There were twelve apples. He took *everyone*

正: There were twelve apples. He took *every one*

譯: 有十二個蘋果。他拿一個。

【講解】 *everyone* 是 *everybody* (各人, 一切的人) 的意義, 專指人而言。 *every one* 指某一個總體中的每一個而言, 可用於人的場合也可用於物的場合。

§ 325. hope 與 expect

誤: I *hope* she will die soon.

正: I *expect* she will die soon.

譯: 我想她就要死了。

【講解】 *hope* 是「希望」的意思, *expect* 是「料想」的意思。 *hope* 對樂意的事情而言, *expect* 却不表示任何情感。

§ 326. hope 與 wish

誤: I *hope* you success.

正: I *wish* you success.

譯: 我願你成功。

【講解】 *hope* 與 *wish* 不但在意義上不同, 在用法上也不同。 *hope* 後的受詞總是一句子句, 例如: I hope he will succeed, 它上面的 *hope* 實在是 *wish* 之誤 (參閱 § 76)。

§ 327 fulfil 與 fill

誤： She *fulfilled* my cup with tea.

正： She *filled* my cup with tea.

譯： 她把我的杯沖滿茶。

【講解】 *fulfil* 是「履行」，「完成」等的意思，不能用以替代表示「充滿」的 *fill*。

§ 328. gold 與 golden

誤： It is a *golden* coin.

正： It is a *gold* coin.

譯： 這是金幣。

【講解】 *gold* 指實在的金，*golden* 有比喻的意味。金幣是由實在的金所鑄成，故應說 *gold coin*，不應說 *golden coin*。

§ 329. hard 與 hardly

誤： I studied *hardly* all day long.

正： I studied *hard* all day long.

譯： 我整日用功讀書。

【講解】 參閱 § 121.

§ 330. high 與 highly

誤： The birds flew *highly*.

正： The birds flew *high*.

譯： 鳥飛得高。

【講解】 參閱 § 121.

§ 331. late 與 lately

誤: He returned *lately* from school.

正: He returned *late* from school.

譯: 他從學校回來得遲。

【講解】 參閱 § 121.

§ 332. hear 與 listen

誤: I impatiently *hear*d everything he said.

正: I impatiently *listened to* everything he said.

譯: 我不耐聽他所說的每一件事。

【講解】 *hear* 是「聽見」, *listen* 是「注意傾聽」, 兩者不能混用。又 *listen* 之後, 通常接 *to* 字。

§ 333. tall 與 long

誤: He is a *long* boy.

正: He is a *tall* boy.

譯: 他是身材高的小孩。

【講解】 *long* 雖作「長」解, 但沒有「高度」的含義, 故不能代 *tall* 而用。

§ 334. later 與 latter

誤: I spent the *later* part of the week in the town.

正: I spent the *latter* part of the week in the town.

譯: 該星期的後部份我費在城中。

【講解】 *later* 指時間的遲早, *latter* 則指順序的先後。

§ 335. can 與 may

誤: *Can* I go with you?

正: *May* I go with you?

譯: 我可以和你同去嗎?

【講解】 *Can* 不能用以代表示請求的 *may*。

§ 336. memorize 與 memorialize

誤: In this way we *memorize* our ancestors.

正: In this way we *memorialize* our ancestors.

譯: 這樣我們紀念我們的祖先。

【講解】 *memorize* 是「默記」, *memorialize* 是「紀念」, 兩字不能混用。

§ 337. noise 與 voice

誤: I cannot sleep for the *voice* of the carriages.

正: I cannot sleep for the *noise* of the carriages.

譯: 我因馬車的噪聲而不能睡。

【講解】 *voice* 通常指講話或歌唱; *noise* 則指嘈雜的聲音, 兩者不能相混。

§ 338. pleasant 與 pleased

誤: I am *pleasant* to see you.

正: I am *pleased* to see you.

譯: 我遇見你頗愉快。

【講解】 pleasant 是「使人愉快的」，不能用以代「感覺愉快的」解。

§ 339. principle 與 principal

誤： It is an invariable *principal*.

正： It is an invariable *principle*.

譯： 這是一定的原則。

【講解】 principle 是「原則」，「主義」解，principal 是「校長」，「主腦」，「領袖」解，兩者不能相混。

練習 (60)

把括弧中適當的單字或片語填在空格處：—

1. Mary is twelve years old. Her (elder, older) — sister is twenty years old.
2. Both of them are (older, elder) — than I.
3. (Everyone, Every one) — has his faults and virtues.
4. (Everyone, Every one) — of us has faults.
5. I (expect, hope) — he will fail.
6. I sincerely (expect, hope) — you will soon recover.
7. I (hope, wish) — it will be fine tomorrow.
8. I (hope, wish) — they were here
9. The hotel (is fulfilled, is filled) — with guests.
10. The prophecy was (fulfilled, filled) — .
11. It is calculated on a (gold, golden) — basis.

12. It is a (gold, golden) — opportunity.
13. One must work as (hard, hardly) — as possible.
14. I (hardly, hard) — believe it will rain.
15. The sea is running (highly, high) — .
16. He is (high, highly) — pleased.
17. If you come home (late, lately) —, you will be locked out.
18. I have not heard from him (late, lately) —.
19. Did you (listen, hear) — anything about it?
20. Please (listen to, hear) — what I tell you.
21. He is (longer, taller) — than you by two inches.
22. This rope is not so (long, tall) — as that one.
23. He came (later, latter) — than I expected.
24. I prefer the (latter, later) — to the former.
25. (Can, May) — she play piano as well as you?
26. (Can, May) — I ask a question?
27. The teacher asked the student to (memorize, memorialize) — the poem.
28. How can we (memorialize, memorize) — those who have died for the country.
29. The (noise, voice) — is annoying.
30. His (voice, noise) — does not carry far.



31. It is a (pleasant, pleased) — place to live in.
32. I shall be (pleasant, pleased) — to go if you will accompany me.
33. I must consult my (principle, principal) —.
34. The (principle, principal) — in both machines is the same.

§ 340. promise 與 permit

誤: The teacher *promised* me to go.

正: The teacher *permitted* me to go.

譯: 這教員許可我去。

【講解】 permit 是「許可」的意思，不能用以替代「允許」或「允諾」的 promise。

§ 341. number 與 quantity

誤: A large *quantity* of spectators came.

正: A large *number* of spectators came.

譯: 許多觀客來。

【講解】 quantity 指「分量」而言，number 則指可計數的 number 而言，兩者不能相混。

§ 342. sweep 與 wipe 或 brush

誤: Tell her to *sweep* my desk.

正: Tell her to *wipe* my desk.

譯: 囑他揩抹我的寫字檯。

誤： He *sweeps* his clothes before going out.

正： He *brushes* his clothes before going out.

譯： 他出去以前擦刷他的衣服。

【講解】 sweep 是「掃拭」不能用以替代表示「揩抹」的 wipe 或表示「擦刷」的 brush.

§ 343. take 與 bring

誤： Please *take* the book to me.

正： Please *bring* the book to me.

譯： 請把書帶給我。

【講解】 take 是「拿去」，bring 是「拿來」，它們是相反的，中國學生往往把 take 代 bring 而用，那是錯誤的。

§ 344. read 與 study

誤： You must *read* hard.

正： You must *study* hard.

譯： 你必須用功學習（研究）。

【講解】 read 是「誦讀」的意思，study 是「學習」或「研究」的意思，在用 study 的場合不能用 read.

§ 345. war 與 battle

誤： Owing to the *battle*, everything is dear.

正： Owing to the *war*, everything is dear.

譯： 因為戰爭，各物都貴。

【講解】 war 是指戰爭的全體，battle 是指戰爭中的戰役，換句話說前者包括後者，後者是前者的個別戰事。

§ 346. loyal 與 royal

誤： He was *royal* to his master.

正： He was *loyal* to his master.

譯： 他對他的主人忠心。

【講解】 這兩字因讀音相近，中國學生往往把它們混用。loyal 是「忠心的」，royal 是「王的」。

§ 347. asleep 與 sleeping

誤： These *asleep* children are pupils of that school.

正： These *sleeping* children are pupils of that school.

譯： 這幾個睡着的孩子，是那個學校的學生。

【講解】 asleep 與 sleeping 在意義上是相同的，但用法不同。asleep 絕不能用在名詞的前面，sleeping 則可用在名詞前面。

§ 348. at peace 與 in peace

誤： We can sleep *at peace*.

正： We can sleep *in peace*.

譯： 我們能安靜地睡。

【講解】 at peace 是「和平」，in peace 是「平安」，兩者不能混用。

§ 449. naked 與 bare

誤： His arms are *naked* to the elbow.

正： His arms are *bare* to the elbow.

譯： 她的手臂裸露到肘部。

【講解】 *naked* 指全部的裸，不能用以代指局部的裸的 *bare*。

§ 350. handsome 與 beautiful

誤： This young man is *beautiful*.

正： This young man is *handsome*.

譯： 這少年貌美。

【講解】 *beautiful* 對女子用，不能對男子用； *handsome* 對男子用，不對女子用。

§ 351. business 與 commerce

誤： *Commerce* is improving.

正： *Business* is improving.

譯： 生意已有進步。

【講解】 *commerce* 與 *business* 雖都可作「商業」解，但後者有相當於「生意」或「營業」的含義，而前者沒有。

§ 352. cloths 與 clothes

誤： I wear comfortable *clot*'s.

正： I wear comfortable *clothes*.

譯： 我穿舒服的衣服。

【講解】 *cloths* 是 *cloth* (布) 的複數，不能用以代替 *clothes* (衣服)。

§ 353. alphabet 與 letters

誤： There are altogether twenty-six *alphabets*.

正： There are altogether twenty-six *letters*.

譯： 共有二十六個字母。

【講解】 *alphabet* 是指字母的總稱，*letter* 是指個別的字，故我們說 English has an *alphabet* containing twenty-six *letters*.

§ 354. both 與 all

誤： He has two brothers. *All* are studying here.

正： He has two brothers. *Both* are studying here.

譯： 他有兩個弟弟。兩人都在這裏讀書。

【講解】 *both* 用在「兩個」的場合，*all* 用在「兩個以上」的場合，用 *all* 以代 *both* 是錯的。

§ 355. certain 與 sure

誤： It is *sure* that the report is false.

正： It is *certain* that the report is false.

譯： 這報告確是假的。

【講解】 *sure* 與 *certain* 雖同作「確定」解，但以 *it* 作主詞時，不能用 *sure* 以代 *certain*。

§ 356. comfortable 與 comforting

誤： His words were *comfortable*.

正： His words *are comforting*.

譯： 他的話是使人安慰的。

【講解】 comfortable 作「舒適的」解，comforting 作「使人安慰的」解，前者不能用以代後者用。

### 練習 (61)

把括弧中的適當字語填在空格處：—

1. He (promised, permitted) — me his help.
2. The master (promised, permitted) — the servant to depart.
3. He owns a (number, quantity) — of houses.
4. There is a large (number, quantity) — of chickens.
5. Please (sweep, brush, wipe) — away the snow.
6. We need to (sweep, brush, wipe) — our hair.
7. He (swept, brushed, wiped) — the moisture from the corners of his eyes.
8. He (took, brought) — the letter to the post office.
9. Who has (taken, brought) — my book?
10. I (took, brought) — her a very handsome present from Paris.
11. He is (reading, studying) — a newspaper.
12. He (reads, studies) — English at school.

13. Russia was beaten in the (battle, war) — with Japan.
14. The (battle, war) — was fought early in the morning.
15. He remained (royal, loyal) — to the King.
16. He serves in the (royal, loyal) — household.
17. It is a (sleeping, asleep) — car.
18. It is a (sleeping, asleep) — sickness.
19. He was (naked, bare) — .
20. One of his feet is (naked, bare) — .
21. This boy looks very (beautiful handsome) — .
22. How do you like this (beautiful, handsome) — girl?
23. Many of the factories closed down owing to the depression of (business, commerce) — .
24. He is engaged in retail (business, commerce) — .
25. My (clothes, cloths) — were made to order.
26. Where did you get your (clothes, cloths) — made?
27. A, B, C, D are English (alphabets, letters) — .
28. I have two books I like (all, both) — of them.
29. It is not (certain, sure) — whether there will be a meeting.
30. It is a (comforting, comfortable) — news.

§ 357. favourable 與 favourite

誤： This is my *favourable* book.

正： This is my *favourite* book.

譯： 這是我心愛的書。

【講解】 *favourable* 作「有利的」解，不能用以代表「心愛的」的 *favourite*。

§ 358. fresh 與 flesh

誤： He gives me some *flesh* water.

正： He gives me some *fresh* water.

譯： 他給我一些淡水。

【講解】 *fresh* 與 *flesh* 兩字除讀音相近外，在含義上沒有相同的地方，但正因讀音相近，一般初學英語者往往把它們相混。

§ 359. hung 與 hanged

誤： The pictures have been *hanged* up.

正： The pictures have been *hung* up.

譯： 圖畫已經掛起來。

【講解】 *hung* 與 *hanged* 都是 *hang* 的過去式或過去分詞，但前者用在「掛」的意義上，後者則用在「絞死」的意義上。

§ 360. lovely 與 loving

誤： I am your *lovely* friend.



正： I am your *loving* friend.

譯： 我是愛你的朋友。

【講解】 *lovely* 是「美麗可愛」的意思，不能代表「愛別人的」的 *loving*，如說自己是 *lovely friend* 是很可笑的。

§ 361. momentous 與 momentary

誤： It is a *momentous* pain.

正： It is a *momentary* pain.

譯： 這是一時的痛苦。

【講解】 *momentous* 與 *momentary* 兩字雖同由 *moment* 而來，但前者是「重要的」意思，後者是「一時的」或「時時刻刻的」意思，它們不能混用。

§ 362. namely 與 such as

誤： There are five vowels, *such as* [a], [o], [i], [o], and [u].

正： There are five vowels, *namely* [a], [e], [i], [o], and [u].

譯： 元音有五個，就是 a, e, i, o, 和 u.

【講解】 *such as* 用以例舉幾個例子，*namely* 則將所指的完全說出，故 *such as* 不能替 *namely* 而用。

§ 363. cost 與 take

誤： It *cost* him one week to finish it.

正： It *took* him one week to finish it.

譯： 這事他化去一星期完成。

【講解】 take 與 cost 雖都可作「化費」講，但後者專指金錢或勞力等而言，take 則指時間而言，兩者不能混用。

### § 364 bread 與 loaf

誤： He gave me a *bread*.

正： He gave me a *loaf*.

譯： 他給我一個麵包。

【講解】 bread 是麵包的總稱，沒有複數，loaf 是一個一個的麵包，兩者不能混用。

### § 365. defend 與 resist

誤： We *defended* our enemies.

正： We *resisted* our enemies.

譯： 我們抵抗我們的敵人。

【講解】 defend 是「保護某物以抵禦外物」的意思，resist 是「直接抵抗」的意思，在用後者的場合不能用 defend (參閱 § 119)。

### § 366. in turn 與 by turns

誤： The two brothers watched *in turn*.

正： The two brothers watched *by turns*.

譯： 兩兄弟交替看守。

【講解】 in turn 是「順序輪流」的意思，by turns 是「交替」的意思，兩者不能混用。

§ 367. in front of 與 in the front of

誤： There is a tree *in the front of* the house.

正： There is a tree *in front of* the house.

譯： 這屋前有一株樹。

【講解】 *in the front of* 是「在…的前部」的意思，不能用以代表「在…的前面」的 *in front of*。

§ 368. on fire 與 on the fire

誤： The house is *on the fire*.

正： The house is *on fire*.

譯： 這屋在火燒。

【講解】 *on the fire* 作「在火上」解，如：the kettle *in on the fire*，它不能作「火燒」解，作「火燒」解的是 *on fire*。

§ 369. poem 與 poetry

誤： The subject of the *poetry* is interesting.

正： The subject of the *poem* is interesting.

譯： 這詩的題旨有趣。

【講解】 *poetry* 是詩的總稱，不能用以代表表示一篇一篇的 *poem*。

§ 370. example 與 sample

誤： Please send us some *exam ples*.

正： Please send us some *samples*.

譯： 請寄幾個樣品給我們。

誤： I can give some *samples* to prove the truth.

正： I can give some *examples* to prove the truth.

譯： 我能舉幾個例來證明這真理。

【講解】 *sample* 是「樣品」, *example* 是所舉的「例」, 兩字不能混用。

### 練習 (62)

把下面括弧中的適當字語填在空格處：—

1. This place is (favourable, favourite) — place for study.
2. English is my (favourite, favourable) — subject.
3. It is a (flesh, fresh) — breeze.
4. He is losing (flesh, fresh) — .
5. The room is (hanged, hung) — with pictures.
6. He (hanged, hung) — himself in his own house.
7. He is love-sick on the (loving, lovely) — girl.
8. What agony it must be for the (loving, lovely) — mother.

9. It is a (momentous, momentary)——question.
10. There are ( momentous, momentary ) —— interruptions.
11. He goes to Nanking twice a week, (namely, such as) —— Wednesdays and Saturdays.
12. Birds of prey, (namely, such as)—— the eagle and the hawk, do not lay many legs.
13. It (took, cost) —— him a good deal of trouble.
14. It (took, cost) —— him a year to write the book.
15. (Bread, Loaf) —— is the staff of life.
16. This is the only (loaf, bread)—— that he has.
17. He (defended, resisted) —— himself stoutly.
18. They ( resisted, defended ) —— the invading troops.
19. His fortune is favourable and unfavourable (in turn, by turns) —— .
20. The students answer the teacher's question (in turn, by turns) —— .
21. He sat (in the front of, in front of) —— me at the theatre.
22. There are four trees (in the front of, in front of) —— the garden.
23. He put the kettle (on fire, on the fire) —— .

24. We saw the buildings (on fire, on the fire)  
—— .
25. This (poem, poetry) —— is a fine work.
26. He wrote very good (poem, poetry) —— .
27. He pointed out many such (examples, samples)  
—— .
28. I will write to the company for some (samples, examples) —— .

## 第十章 常被誤讀的字

§ 371. 元音讀錯的字：一

	誤	正
—aco (如 <i>preface</i> , <i>solace</i> 等)	—eis	—is
acquaint	æ'kwɒnt	ə'kweɪnt
—ablə (如 <i>probable</i> , <i>lovable</i> 等)	—oibl	—əbl
admiral	əd'maɪrəl	'ædmərəl
afraid	æ'freɪd	ə'freɪd
afternoon	ɑ:ftə'nun	ɑ:ftə'nu:n
again	ə'ɡæn	ə'ɡeɪn, ə'ɡen
—age (如 <i>advantage</i> , <i>passage</i> 等)	—eɪdʒ	—ɪdʒ
aged (adj.)	'eɪdʒd	'eɪdʒɪd
already	ə:l'reɪdeɪ	ə:l'reɪdi
always	'ə:lweɪz	'ə:lweɪz
amass	ə'mɑ:s	ə'mæs
among	ə'maʊŋ, ə'məŋ	ə'mʌŋ
ancient	'ænfənt	'eɪnfənt
angel	'ændʒəl	'eɪndʒəl
another	ə'nɑ:ðə	ə'nʌðə
approve	ə'pru:v	ə'pru:v
Asia	'eɪʃiə	'eɪʃə

	誤	正
—ate (在名詞或形容 詞如 <i>senate</i> , <i>deli- cate</i> 等)	—eit	—it
aviation	ævi'eɪʃən	eɪvi'eɪʃən
badge	bəɪdʒ	bædʒ
bargain	'bɑ:geɪn	'bɑ:ɡɪn
barrister	'bɑ:ristə	'bærɪstə
basin	'beɪsɪn	'beɪsɪn
breakfast	'breɪkfɑ:st	'breɪkfəst
brother	'brɑ:ðə	'brʌðə
bury	'bɜ:ri	'berɪ
capable	'kæpəɪbl	'keɪpəbl
change	'tʃændʒ	'tʃeɪndʒ
coffee	'kɒfi:	'fəfi
college	'kɒləɪdʒ	'kɒlɪdʒ
colour	'kɑ:lə	'kʌlə
comfort	'kɒmfə:t	'kʌmfət
comma	'kɒmə:	'kɒmə
country	'kʌntreɪ	'kʌntri
couple	'kɒpl	'kʌpl
cowardice	'kəʊədais	'kəʊədɪs
cradle	'krædl	'kreɪdl
crooked (aɪj.)	'krukd	'kru:kɪd
crow	kraʊ	krou
cupboard	'kʌpbɔ:d	'kʌbəd



	誤	正
curs'd (adj.)	'kɔ:st	'kɔ:sið
danger	dændʒə	'deindʒə
—day (如 <i>Sunday</i> , <i>Monday</i> 等)	—dei	—di
deafen	'di:fn	'defn
divorce	dai'vɔ:s	di'vɔ:s
double	'dɔbl	'dʌbl
down	dɔn	daun
e—(如 <i>event</i> , <i>below</i> 等)	i:—	i—
effort	'efɔ:t	'efət
England	'ɪŋglænd	'ɪŋglənd
evaporate	i:'vɔipɔreit	i'væpərəit
fallacy	'fɔ:læsoi	'fælesi
friend	frænd	frænd
—ful (如 <i>wonderful</i> , <i>beautiful</i> 等)	—fu:l	—ful
full	fu:l	ful
good	gu:d	gud
govern	'gəvən	'gʌvən
grammar	'grɑ:mə	'græmə
grammatical	grɑ:'mætikəl	grə'mætikəl
gross	grəs	grou
improve	im'pru:v	im'pru:v
inspiration	ɪnspai'reiʃən	ɪnspə'reiʃən

	誤	正
international	intə'neɪʃɪnəl	intə'næʃnəl
island	'aɪlənd	'aɪlənd
Japan	dʒə'pæn	dʒə'pæn
June	dʒun	dʒu:n
knowledge	'nəleɪdʒ	'nəlɪdʒ
learned	'lə:nd	'lə:nɪd
lively	'lɪvleɪ	'laɪvli
—ly (如 <i>quickly</i> , <i>slowly</i> 等)	—ləɪ	li
monk	mɒŋk	mʌŋk
monkey	'mɒŋki:	'mʌŋki
moon	mʌn, mʊn	mu:n
mother	'mɑ:ðə	'mʌðə
move	məʊv	mu:v
national	'neɪʃənəl	'næʃənəl
noon	nʌn	nu:n
noun	nən	naun
orange	'ɒrændʒ	'ɒrɪndʒ, 'ɒrændʒ
other	'ɑ:ðə	'ʌðə
particular	pɑ:'tɪkjʊlə	pə'tɪkjʊlə
pear	piə	pɛə
plumage	'plʌmeɪdʒ	'plu:mɪdʒ
premier	'pri:mjə	'prɛmjə
pretty	'preɪti	'prɪti
prove	prəʊv	pru:v

	誤	正
purpose	'pə:pous	'pə:pəs
range	rændʒ	rəindʒ
rational	'reɪʃənl	'ræʃənl
ready	'reɪdeɪ	'redi
remove	ri:'mouv	ri'mu:v
said	seɪd	sed
says	seɪz	sez
saw	sju:	sou
shoe	ʃou	ʃu:
short	ʃɒt	ʃɔ:t
soon	sun	su:n
soup	soup	su:p
southern	'sauðən	'sAðən
spoon	spun	spu:n
strange	'strændʒ	'streɪdʒ
—tain (如 <i>captain</i> , <i>mountain</i> 等)	—tæn	--tɪn
through	θrou	θru:
—tion (如 <i>nation</i> , <i>notion</i> 等)	—ʃɪn	ʃən
today	tu:'deɪ	tə'deɪ, tu'deɪ
tomorrow	tu:'mɔ:rəu	tə'mɔ:rəu, tu'me- rou
tonight	tu:'naɪt	tə'naɪt, tu'naɪt
trouble	'trɒbl	'trAbl

	誤	正
twopence	'tu:pens	'tʌpens
via	vio	'vaɪə
wicked	wikt	'wikid
wonder	'wʌndə	'wʌndə
wood	wu:d	wud
young	jəŋ	ʒʌŋ
-y (如 city, cruel- ty 等)	-ei	-i

§ 372. 輔音誤讀的字：一

	誤	正
abuse (verb)	ə'bjʊ:s	ə'bjʊ:z
accuse	ə'kju:s	ə'kju:z
amuse	ə'mju:s	ə'mju:z
arch	ɑ:k	ɑ:tʃ
as	æs	æz
assemble	ə'zɛmbl	ə'sɛmbl
assembly	ə'zɛmbli	ə'sɛmbli
assist	ə'zɪst	ə'sɪst
assistance	ə'zɪstəns	ə'sɪstəns
assistant	ə'zɪstənt	ə'sɪstənt
assume	ə'zju:m	ə'sju:m
assumption	ə'zʌmpʃən	ə'sʌmpʃən
christian	'krɪʃən	'krɪstʃən
christianity	'krɪʃi'ænitɪ	'krɪsti'ænitɪ
consume	kən'zju:m	kən'sju:m

	誤	正
—d or—ed (如 <i>wiped</i> , <i>walked</i> 等)	—d	—t
debt	debt	det
does	dʌs	dʌz
has	hæs	hæz
his	his	hiz
is	is	iz
kindergarten	ˈkində,ɡɑ:dn	ˈkində,ɡɑ:tn
of	əf	əv
please	pli:s	pli:z
question	ˈkwɛstʃən	ˈkwestʃən
—s (如 <i>wins</i> , <i>goes</i> 等)	—s	—z
—se (如 <i>advertise</i> , <i>nationalise</i> 等)	—s	—z
suggestion	səˈdʒesʃin	səˈdʒestʃən
smooth	smu:θ	smu:ð
twenty	ˈtrenti	ˈtwenti
use (verb)	ju:s	ju:z
was	wəs	wəz

§ 373. 元音與輔音兩者都誤讀的字：一

	誤	正
between	bi:ˈtri:n	b:ˈtwi:n
colonel	ˈkələnl	ˈkə:nl
forehead	ˈfəəhed	ˈfərid, ˈfəred

	誤	正
gasoline	'gæzlin	'gæsəli:n, —lin
half-penny	'hɑ:fpeni	'həipəni
half-pence	'hɑ:fpens	'həipəns
husband	'hʌsbænd	'hʌzbend
lose	lous	lu:z
loser	lousə	lu:zə

§ 374. 重音誤置的字：一

	誤	正
abstract (noun, adj.)	æbs'trækt	'æbstrækt
adverse	æd'və:s	'ædvə:s
advertise	ædvə:'taiz	'ædvə:taiz
aristocracy	æ'ristəkɹəsi	æris'təkɹəsi
diplomacy	'dipləuməsi	dɪ'pləuməsi
electricity	i'lektrɹisiti	ilek'tɹisiti
majesty	mæ'dʒɹisti	'mædʒɹisti
origin	ə'ridʒin	'əridʒin
register	rə'dʒɹistə	'redʒɹistə

§ 375. 元音誤讀重音誤置的字：一

	誤	正
absent (verb)	'æbsnt	əb'sent
absolute	æb'səlu:t	'æbsəlu:t
accent (verb)	'æksənt	ək'sent
acute	'ækju:t	o'kju:t

	誤	正
admirable	æd'mairəbl	'ædmərəbl
Africa	æ'fri:kɑ:	'æfrikə
analyst	æ'nælist	'ænəlist
ancestor	æn'sæstə	'ænsistə
anecdote	æ'nokdout	'ænikdout
barbarous	bɑ:'bɑ:rəs	'bɑ:bərəs
brigand	bri'gænd	'brigənd
canoe	'kænou	kə'nu:
colleague	kə'li:g	'kəli:g
committee	kəmi'ti:	kə'miti
connivance	'kənivəns	kə'raivəns
contrivance	'kəntri:vəns	kən'traivəns
creature	kri:'eitʃə	'kri:tʃə
decay	'di:kəi	di'kəi
excellent	ek'sələnt	'əksələnt
interpret	'intə:prət	in'tə:prɪt
Japanese	dʒæ'pæni:z	dʒæpə'ni:z
orator	ou'reitə	'ərətə
perfect (adj.)	pə:'fekt	'pə:fɪkt
purchase	pə:'tʃeis	'pɜ:tʃɪs
relative	ri:'leitiv	'rələtiv
telegraphy	'təligræfi	ti'ləgræfi

# 習題答案

## 練習 (1)

1. He bought ten *dozen* books yesterday.
2. *Commanders-in-chief* are very powerful.
3. *Scores* of people were killed.
4. Your coat is covered with *dust*.
5. The village is ten *li* away from the city.
6. Her *hair* flowed loose over her shoulders.
7. Her three-*month* old baby is a girl.
8. I have two score exercise books.
9. He shaves his *beard* every day.
10. Do you see the bees and *sheep*?
11. Enclosed please find two ten *dollar* notes.
12. He treated his servant with great *cruelty*.
13. *Smoke is* harmful to our health.
14. Chinese *cash* are still used in Bali (荷屬東印度一小島).
15. He told the story *dozens* of times.

## 練習 (2)

1. The *handle of the door* has been broken.
2. *The streets of this town* are dirty.
3. We shall have a month's holiday.
4. The *birds' nests* were broken.



5. The *fruit of the garden* is ripe.
6. The *flies'* humming (嗡嗡聲) is annoying (使人討厭).
7. I will give you five *minutes'* grace (五分鐘的寬限).
8. The *hands of the clock* (針) were pointing to six.
9. It is heaven's will.
10. It was within a hair's breadth of overflowing (它幾乎要泛濫了).

### 練習 (3)

1. *He* looks healthy.
2. I am a king for *information*.
3. The government supplied the troops with abundant *ammunition*.
4. There is *plenty of* snow.
5. This is my *favorite* book.
6. This *pair of scissors* are new.
7. The reason why he refused it was *that* he did not like it.
8. He is an *alumnus* of your college.
9. Pay attention to your work.
10. There are many *people* in the room.
11. He *despised* his enemy.

12. He has some knowledge of music.
13. This *pair of trousers are* too short.

## 練習 (4)

1. Smoking is not necessary for *us* boys.
2. *Whom* are you thinking of?
3. Between you and *me*, I think him a fool.
4. You are cleverer than *I*.
5. It was *he* that ran away with their important documents (文件).
6. *Who* do you think will win?
7. We students should always study hard.
8. It is useful to *us* girls.
9. He likes you better than *I* (*like y·u*) or (*he likes*) *me*.
10. You can write better than *I*.

## 練習 (5)

1. I find *in the bookstore* a picture which is quite to my taste (很合我的口味).
2. *You and I* are good friends.
3. There is a difference of two years between *his* age and *mine*.
4. Everyone has *his* shortcomings (缺點).
5. Nothing is possible for me, who *am* so sick and weak.

6. The girl is weeping who lost her watch yesterday.
7. *Two classmates, a teacher, my brother, and I* were present.
8. *Your* house and *mine* are both new.
9. It is I who *have* lost a book.
10. Your brother, you, and I belong to the same club (俱樂部).

## 練習 (6)

1. There are no such books (*as*) I want.
2. *Whomever* you elect must be a Chinese.
3. This prize is awarded to *whoever* writes the best English essay.
4. *There* is no need to get excited.
5. He is not such a man *as* I admire.
6. I never saw such things *as* you have described.
7. It is no wonder that he should have succeeded.
8. *Whomever* the gods love die young.
9. Whoever comes is welcome.
10. He stopped *whoever* looked at him.

## 練習 (7)

1. He is *inferior* to me.
2. The weather in summer is more disagreeable than *that in winter*.
3. Winter is colder than *any other* season.
4. You have books, but I have *money*.
5. She is *older* than your cousin.
6. The Yangtze is longer than *any other* river in China.
7. You are superior *to* him in learning.
8. I am *stronger* than my brother.
9. He is not only diligent but also *honest*.
10. This is more inferior *to* that in importance.

## 練習 (8)

1. I am *tired* of my work.
2. He entered the Church *alone* at night.
3. She acted *in a lovely manner*.
4. I am *afraid* of the dog.
5. *Are you fond of* the book?
6. She is *ready* to start.

## 練習 (9)

1. Have you ever seen *such a* picture?
2. I have *one* pen, two pencils, and four books.
3. I came by *train*.
4. He is *a* European.
5. He will be sent to *prison*.
6. He waited *an* hour or two.
7. He will wear full dress at dinner this evening.
8. It will take a month or two to finish this.
9. I have not seen him since we were at *school* together.
10. I never saw *such a* fine sight.

## 練習 (10)

1. *Yenching* University (燕京大學) is a Christian institution (基督教學校).
2. *The North China Daily News* (字林西報) is a British paper.
3. He is *the best* student in our class.
4. The directors appointed him *general* manager (董事任他爲總經理).
5. Lake Tsao (巢湖) is in Anhwei (安徽).
6. He arrived here on *the fifth* instant (本月五日).

7. *The Pearl River* (珠江) is one of the three longest rivers in China.
8. How can we master *the English* language?
9. *Lake Poyang* (鄱陽湖) is in *the Province* of Kiangsi (江西省).
10. He was elected *secretary* (書記).
11. Is it easy to read *the Analects* of Confucius (論語)?
12. He is the President of *the Examination Yuan*.
13. Who is the President of *the United States*?
14. English is not very difficult to learn.
15. Did you go to *bed* early last night?

## 練習 (11)

1. He told me a *wonderful* story.
2. I did not see *any* students in the room.
3. Things are *dear* in the height of the season (各物在當令時很——).
4. You should be *polite* towards everybody.
5. This is only one *part* of the story.
6. I feel *uneasy* about my friend's health.
7. It is *impossible* for me to answer such a question.
8. They were *surprised* at hearing him say so.
9. Thank you. *Don't mention it*.
10. I am sorry to be *unable* to come.

11. Shut your *other* eye.
12. I stayed there three *whole* days.
13. Is there any water in the bottle? Yes, there is *some* water in the bottle.
14. Could you tell me whether the price of this watch is *high* or *low*?
15. It cost me only three dollars. It is very *cheap*.
16. *Another* city has been captured.
17. The question is *difficult* to answer.
18. Here are some cakes. *Help yourself*.
19. Nothing is *possible* for her, who is so poor and weak.
20. I injured one finger and then *another*.

練習 (12)

1. Does he *hide* in the bushes?
2. I have made some mistakes. They will *lose* me many marks.
3. They *began* their work in morning.
4. I have *written* several letters to my father.
5. She *shut* the door.
6. He *spends* his time in reading.
7. He is fond of shooting.
8. You may *choose* whatever you please.
9. He was *frozen* to death.
10. It *cost* me three dolla s.

11. Last night he *drank* six bottles of wine.
12. They have *ridden* ten miles.
13. I asked him not to *break* his promise.
14. He has *risen* to the head of his class.
15. He *lay* all night on his sleepless pillow.

## 練習 (13)

1. Four miles *is* (is, are) a good walk.
2. Neither my brother nor my sister *is* (is, are) at home.
3. The captain, as well as his men, *is* (is, are) unwilling to fight.
4. Either you or I *am* (are, am) wrong.
5. Neither of them *is* (are, is) honest.
6. All of his grey hair *has been* (has been, have been) cut off.
7. He *does not* (does not, do not) speak French.
8. Either of you *is* (are, is) right.
9. The house, together with the furnishings *was sold* (was sold, were sold).
10. Three fourths of the earth's surface *consists* (consist, consists) of water.
11. A hundred dollars a month *is* (are, is) a moderate income.
12. She *doesn't* (don't, doesn't) care.
13. All the people *were* (was, were) frightened.



14. Neither the general nor his soldiers *are* (are, is) to blame.
15. The teacher as well as the students *has* (has, have) gone to the laboratory.

## 練習 (14)

1. I shall not start if it *rains*.
2. The new general *arrived* two days ago.
3. I got to the station after the train *had* started.
4. He *has* not arrived yet.
5. I *had* read this book when I was a child.
6. They *talked* noisily.
7. We must wait till he *comes*.
8. I *wrote* a letter to my sister.
9. The boys *have* left the school.
10. The road was muddy. It had rained during the night.

## 練習 (17)

1. Her husband *has been* dead since last Thursday.
2. He said that he *would* do it.
3. The teacher told the student that the principal *had* been in the wrong.

4. He informed me that his brother *had* arrived.
5. It is three years since I *began* to learn English.
6. Since you are ill, I will go alone.
7. He asked me why I *had* struck his dog.
8. Charles told his brother that Jack *might* not come.
9. We *have resided* in Shanghai since we left our native town.
10. This *is* the tenth day since I wrote to him.

## 練習 (18)

1. *He told me that he would follow my advice*  
(He told me that. . .)
2. *The teacher told us that the earth is round.*  
(The teacher told us that. . .)
3. *He told me that he had received my letter*  
(He told me that. . .)
4. *He hoped that it would not rain.* (He hoped that. . .)
5. *He asked me whether I could speak English.*  
(He asked me whether. . .)

## 練習 (19)

1. I *was scolded* by my father this morning.
2. It can *sell* very well.

3. This parcel carries quite easily.
4. Velvet (天鵝絨) *feels* smooth.
5. The flower *smells* sweet.
6. The matter will be duly *attended to*.
7. How does this book read?
8. He is being *looked at* by all the bystanders (旁觀者).
9. The letter *reads* as follows.
10. He *is wounded* by a bullet (子彈).

### 練習 (20)

1. He took medicine, so that he *might* get well.
2. We *shall* be sick if we do not take care of our health.
3. Li: William went there yesterday.  
Ho: So *did* I.
4. Men work, in order that they *may* earn a living.
5. I *fear* him.
6. He *plays* tennis every day.
7. He *is reading* the *North-China Daily News* (字林西報).
8. He has lost the game, *hasn't he?*
9. You will come to see me, *won't you?*
10. This lesson *has been* explained.
11. I am afraid we *shall* lose the game.

12. I am very sorry that he *failed*.
13. He *is looking* at you.
14. He studies hard, and so *do* I.
15. What *happened* yesterday?
16. He started early, that he might not be late.

## 練習 (21)

1. I want *to ask* you a question.
2. Don't forget *to write* to me.
3. He ought *to go* now.
4. He made them *obey* him.
5. May I ask you to help me *to answer* these questions?
6. You need not answer every question.
7. He had better *stay* here.
8. I think *I will* go abroad.
9. Who is *to blame* in this matter?
10. Does he deserve to be blamed?
11. You ought to *have answered* the questions yesterday.
12. Be careful *not to* take cold.
13. We think him to be guilty.
14. I heard him *say* so.
15. I'll have him *do* it.

## 練習 (22)

1. What is he *reading*?
2. After the teacher *left* they all went to play.
3. When we *arrived* there it was raining.
4. Judging from the ruins, *we conclude it* must once have been a beautiful city.
5. *The money having been paid* to him, he gave me the book.
6. While *we were writing* our Chinese essays, the teacher entered the room.
7. Before he *came* to school, he wrote a letter to his father.
8. Considering your age, you have done very well.
9. Living in a small village, he rarely has visitors.
10. When *we were discussing* our future plan, he raised a very important question.

## 練習 (25)

1. Two weeks have *elapsed* since he left.
2. Don't walk *across* the room.
3. Is your *name* Lien-shan?
4. He told me that he would *accompany* me.

5. Let us *discuss* the matter.
6. They called him *an ass*.
7. The boy is called John.
8. I accompanied my parents *to* the restaurant.
9. I apologized to him *for having* taken his book.
10. Let us avoid *using* such words.
11. They are *called* fools.
12. The lightning is accompanied with thunder.
13. What did your teacher *tell* you to do?
14. They discussed *the question of abolishing examinations*.
15. *Three years have elapsed*.
16. I shall avoid *making* any promise.
17. He is said to be wise.
18. He came here accompanied by his daughters.
19. He apologized for what he had done.
20. He avoided *making mistakes*.

## 練習 (26)

1. Did he *mention* the matter?
2. They *resemble each other* in appearance.
3. I can't help *feeling* sorry for him.
4. It helps no one to understand.
5. Did you *meet* some of your friends on your journey?

6. Is he lacking money?
7. They resemble each other in shape.
8. Don't mention *forgetting* your promise.
9. What is he talking about? Let us stop *listening* to him.
10. They *robbed him of* all he had.
11. He *lacks* common sense (常識).
12. The school has begun. Tell them to stop *playing* in the gymnasium (健身房).
13. He refused *to* come.
14. The house was robbed of every thing inside.
15. I am lacking in strength.

### 練習 (27)

1. I acquainted him with the event.
2. I know *he is* a good man.
3. We must *defend ourselves from* their attack.
4. He knows *how to* fire a gun (放鎗).
5. The poor prefer *summer to* winter.
6. All of them have *left* the place.
7. The editor is *writing* a leader (社論).
8. I missed *seeing* the picture
9. I prefer to spend my vacation here *rather than* at home.
10. I will leave off *studying* Japanese.
11. I *am acquainted* with these boys.

12. The law defends people from injustice (冤枉).
13. Do you know how to pronounce this word?
14. If..... I should have missed *seeing* you.
15. Which do you *think* is more desirable (值得希求), health or wealth?

## 練習 (28)

1. He ought to have been *here* (here, in here) by this time.
2. He lives ten miles *from where* (where, from where) I am living.
3. He sits up very *late* (late, lately) (他晚上睡得很遲).
4. When shall we get *there* (there, to there)?
5. He got *home* (home, to home) safe and sound.
6. Does he appear *wise* (wise, wisely)?
7. That explanation sounds *true* (truly, true) (那說明聽起來好像是確實的).
8. I shall go back *home*, (to home, home) very soon.
9. I feel quite *comfortable*, (comfortable, comfortably).
10. They are found *everywhere* (everywhere, in everywhere) in the city.



11. How far is it *from here* (here, from here) *to there* (there, to there)?
12. I work as *hard* (hard, hardly) as I can.
13. I grow *uneasy*, (uneasy, uneasily) at his long absence.
14. He is *high* (high, highly) paid.
15. The waves ran *high* (high, highly).

## 練習 (29)

1. They *never* come here.
2. Will you please repeat the *sentence*?
3. *Even if* I were in his place, I would not go.
4. He is not always right.
5. Is Manchuria not Chinese territory? *Yes*, it is Chinese territory.
6. He does not like it, and I do not like it *either*.
7. I shall be *much* obliged, if you will kindly send it to me.
8. Have you ever visited that place? *Yes*, I *have* visited it.
9. I visited that place about two years *ago*.

## 練習 (30)

1. *No*, it is not a Christian college.
2. *Yes*, it is a Christian college.

3. *Yes, they belong to the yellow race.*
4. *No, they do not belong to the yellow race*
5. *No, both of them are not communists.*

## 練習 (31)

1. The sun rises *in* the morning.
2. *In* the days of our forefathers (祖先) conditions were different.
3. I received the letter in the afternoon on the third of July.
4. *On* what day did he come here?
5. Bats hide *during* the day.
6. I saw him *on* Sunday evening.
7. He used to study late *at* night.
8. I arrived at ten o'clock *on* the night of the eighth.
9. He left *at* noon.
10. I returned home *on* the following morning.

## 練習 (32)

1. I was engaged *on* that day (在那天我有事在身).
2. Trams are specially crowded *on* a wet day (雨天).
3. *In* past days I seldom went to theatres.
4. I did not go to school *on* Sunday morning.

5. I go to my office at nine o'clock *in* the morning.
6. I never read *at* night.
7. This happened *on* the night of Wednesday
8. The prisoner got away *in* the night on the second of June.
9. The battle commenced (開始) *at* noon on the 3rd of August.
10. He used to sleep *on* summer afternoons.
11. He started early *in* the afternoon.
12. He stayed at home *on* the afternoon of that day.
13. I will ring you up (打電話給你) at six o'clock *in* the evening.
14. They started *on* the same evening.
15. I arrived late *in* the evening on the tenth.

## 練習 (33)

1. The vacation begins *on* July 1st.
2. He never studies *on* Sunday.
3. Our office opens *at* nine o'clock
4. I live in town *in* winter.
5. It happened in times gone by.
6. I have not heard from him *since* that time.
7. *In* the meantime he refused my offer.

8. That custom prevailed *in* the middle ages.
9. What did you find *on* that occasion?
10. Things will be different *in* future.

## 練習 (34)

1. We have a festival (節) *on* the first Sunday in October.
2. The Dragon Boat Festival (端午節) falls *on* June 2nd.
3. He will succeed *in* the near future.
4. He had ease (舒適) *in* his old age.
5. It is a plant that flowers (開花) *in* autumn.
6. Things were quite different *in* his time.
7. It happened *on* a similar occasion.
8. The work began *at* nine o'clock in the morning.
9. He has been ill *since* that time.
10. Could you come *on* Tuesday next?

## 練習 (35)

1. There are difficulties *in* the way.
2. The fields *on* the other side of the river are rich land.
3. I don't think he is *at* home now.
4. You are standing *at* my side.

5. Hankow is situated to the north of the Yangtze River.
6. Kwangtung lies *to* the south of Chekiang.
7. There was a good attendance *at* the meeting.
8. He stood *at* the southern end of the road.
9. They went *in* the direction of the fire.
10. Hangchow (杭州) is *in* the north of Chekiang.

### 練習 (36)

1. The tower is *on* the south side of the river.
2. The trains go *in* opposite directions.
3. Fukien lies *to* (or *on*) the south of Chekiang.
4. Chapei is *in* the north of Shanghai.
5. Hupeh lies *to* the west of Chekiang.
6. The wire bent *at* one end.
7. You should not act *in* this way.
8. I have tried it *in* every possible way.
9. How are all *at* home?
10. He proposed a motion (提出議案) *at* the meeting.

### 練習 (37)

1. *On* what ground did he resign (辭職)?
2. The fleet (艦隊) has been six months *at* sea.
3. *On* what river is Canton (廣州) situated?

4. He res gned *for* several reasons.
5. He is away *on* business.
6. The carpenters are *at* work now.
7. He spoke on the topic (題目) from a religious (宗教的) point of view
8. The battle was fought *on* the sea.
9. The island of Tinghai (定海島, 卽舟山羣島中之最大者) is *on* the coast of Chekiang.
10. The question is *under* consideration.

## 練習 (38)

1. Are they still *at* sea?
2. Fresh-water fish are not found *in* the sea.
3. The squadron (艦隊) is *on* the wide sea now.
4. The scenery *along* the river is beautiful.
5. Ningpo lies *on* the Yung River (甬江).
6. The island of Amoy is situated *on* the coast of Fukien.
7. I refused *for* a certain reason.
8. He was unable to stand up *by* reason of fear.
9. We refused the'r offer *on* the same grounds.
10. They studied it *from* every point of view.
11. We have a plan *under* consideration.
12. He left home *on* business.
13. They are all *at* work.

14. Fuyang (富陽) is situated *on* the Tsientang River.
15. No ships sail *along* the coast now.

### 練習 (39)

1. Where did you make the acquaintance of this lady?
2. It made a deep impression *on* me.
3. I called his attention *to* it.
4. He owes much to his close acquaintance *with* his native tongue.
5. They had an examination in English.
6. I have a great dislike for him.
7. He has a great affection *for* his parents.
8. The examination of the machine has been completed.
9. He concentrates his whole attention on the subject.
10. I have a great liking for science.
11. He feels no envy *at* (or *of*) my advantages.
12. I have an interest *in* his welfare.
13. I shall never forget the impression made *on* me.
14. She has a good knowledge of music.
15. I feel envy *of* him.

## 練習 (40)

1. It gave a very bad impression *on* foreigners.
2. I have close acquaintance *with* it.
3. He made the acquaintance *of* her in England.
4. I have no knowledge *of* his death.
5. When shall we have our examination *in* Chinese?
6. He made an examination *of* the soldier's wounds.
7. He did not pay any attention *to* the matter.
8. He fixed his whole attention *on* the picture.
9. He took a dislike *to* history.
10. I have no liking *for* towns.
11. She has an affection *for* children.
12. He felt some envy *at* my promotion.
13. I feel envy *of* the rich.
14. He takes special interest *in* educational questions.
15. He made interest *with* the judge.

## 練習 (41)

1. They are in need *of* relief.
2. The king has great influence *over* his people.



3. It is difficult to see the motives *for* their actions.
4. The demand *for* rice is not so great at present.
5. I put entire confidence *in* them.
6. They have offered resistance *to* their enemies' attacks.
7. He takes pride *in* his work.
8. You have no excuse for being idle
9. He laid great emphasis on that point.
10. They went there in search *of* gold.

## 練習 (42)

1. My advice has no influence *on* his actions.
2. There is no need *for* assistance
3. The demand *for* gold has become great.
4. His motive *for* murdering the official remains a mystery (仍是一個謎).
5. She made a groundless excuse *for* her absence.
6. Emphasis is thrown *on* the noun.
7. I am in search *of* a new house.
8. The troops retreated without offering resistance *to* the invaders.
9. He takes pride *in* his new house.
10. Public confidence *in* him has been restored.

## 練習 (43)

1. She dresses regardless *of* expense.
2. My plan is different *from* yours.
3. This is made *of* paper.
4. Japan is not equal *to* China in man power (人力).
5. He is not interested *in* my report.
6. The two officials are widely different from each other in education.
7. They are very proud *of* their victory.
8. He is indifferent *to* heat.
9. They are independent *of* each other.
10. Both the government and the people are confident *of* the ultimate victory (最後勝利).
11. They are similar *to* each other in style.
12. Some people are greedy after wealth
13. I am ashamed *of* your conduct.
14. The teacher is very proud *of* your success in the examination.
15. Children are dependent on their parents.

## 練習 (44)

1. There is nothing to be ashamed *of*.
2. He bribed (行賄) the judge (法官) regardless *of* law.

3. Chinese is entirely different *from* English.
4. It is entirely a different thing *with* Russia.
5. Merchants (商人) are greedy *of* (or *after*) gains.
6. I am interested *in* the study of English.
7. This box is made *of* wood.
8. Your book is similar *to* mine.
9. Shanghai is not equal *to* Nanking in military importance (軍事的重要).
10. I am proud *of* my country.
11. Are you confident *of* our success?
12. He is independent *of* his father.
13. Some people are indifferent *to* international affairs (國際事件).
14. His dependence *on* others is a shame to him.
15. He is proud *of* having passed the examination.

### 練習 (45)

1. When will you leave China *for* England?
2. We all agree *to* your suggestion.
3. His eloquence (口才) may be compared *to* a fast-flowing river.
4. In the course of our conversation I touched *on* political matters.
5. Let us begin *with* this song.

6. He will not start *for* Shanghai until three o'clock in the afternoon.
7. We shall sail *for* Japan next week.
8. She was married *to* a general.
9. They congratulated him *on* his graduation.
10. I rejoiced over the good news.

## 練習 (46)

1. Which shall I begin *with*?
2. I came after he had started *for* Nanking.
3. All have left *for* the capital.
4. I don't think the ship will sail *for* Java.
5. I cannot agree *to* this plan.
6. Compared *with* the sun, the earth is very small.
7. He is going to marry his daughter *to* a rich man.
8. Nobody congratulated him *on* his promotion.
9. He rejoiced *at* his aunt's arrival.
10. He never touched *on* political affairs in his speeches.

## 練習 (47)

1. No country joined *in* Japan's protest.
2. They will inquire *into* (查究) the trouble.
3. He suffers greatly *from* the heat.

4. He arrived in London long ago.
5. We should concentrate our attention *on* our work.
6. Something is attached *to* the letter.
7. We inquired after our teacher.
8. He fixed his eyes *on* the picture.
9. They charged the expenses *to* his account.
10. We charged him *with* dishonesty.

## 練習 (48)

1. We should fix our attention *on* our studies.
2. Industries (工業) are concentrated *in* Shanghai.
3. Shall we join *in* their work?
4. A picture is attached *to* it.
5. I inquired of him *about* my luggage.
6. I inquired *about* his health.
7. *To* whose account shall we charge this?
8. The teacher charged him *with* cheating.
9. She is suffering *from* a severe headache.
10. I arrived *at* school safe and sound.

## 練習 (49)

1. What are you looking *at*?
2. He insists *on* the fact.
3. I wait *for* my father's arrival.

4. He has not yet attended *to* his business.
5. Whom are you waiting *for*?
6. Water consists *of* two elements.
7. They laughed *at* the old lady.
8. They listened *to* the music.
9. Our expenditure amounts *to* three hundred dollars.
10. They look *upon* him as an enemy.
11. These pictures belong *to* my brother.
12. He replied *to* the protest (抗議).
13. He came to ask *for* a loan.
14. The hill consists *of* earth and stones.
15. I am going to attend the meeting.
16. He insists *on* my coming.
17. Let us go to hear the band (樂隊) playing.
18. It amounts *to* nothing.
19. I answered the letter by return post.
20. He laughed *at* me for my rustic manners (鄉氣).

## 練習 (50)

1. He has already approached his destination.
2. Tell me the whole story.
3. They thanked me for my service.
4. She accompanied him to the door.
5. The boy obeyed my words.

6. They awaited the good news.
7. The government ordered the suspension of the meeting.
8. Day follows night.
9. It is three years since I left China.
10. They reached their destination last night.
11. Tell me all about it.
12. Soldiers must obey orders.
13. The police ordered the search of the house.
14. We are awaiting his reply.
15. The troops left the hill at daybreak.
16. The party reached Shanghai early this morning.
17. The dog followed his master home.
18. He has approached the village.
19. He accompanied his parents to the theatre.
20. I will thank you to shut the door.

### 練習 (51)

1. I discussed the matter with him.
2. I failed to mention his success.
3. The two brothers resemble each other.
4. Chang rivals Li in wealth.
5. They demanded the withdrawal of the troops.
6. Do not always consult books.

7. My sister informed me that her husband had left for Canton.
8. Please remember my help.
9. He will assist you in any way.
10. He resisted temptation.
11. It gives me pain to oppose you.
12. The landlord demanded the payment of the rent.
13. Who can resist God's will?
14. They are discussing a plan.
15. I am going to consult my physician,
16. I forgot to mention it.
17. He does not remember my name.
18. I informed my parents that I had passed the examination.
19. Did he assist you in doing this?

## 練習 (52)

1. The cliff hangs *over* the sea.
2. My brother is studying *in* England.
3. I think he will die *within* a week (在一週以內).
4. I have a few friends *among* foreigners.
5. The vice prevails *in* the army.
6. This is a common mistake *among* students.
7. I have much more *besides* this.



8. *Through* the newspapers we are able to know what the world is doing.
9. We write *with* a pen.
10. The work will be finished *in* a few days.
11. They *resist* our attacks.
12. He does everything with a view to *servicing* his country.
13. In spite of *my illness* I will go.
14. I met some friends and other people in *addition*.
15. *Because* the oil was out, the light went out.
16. We *oppose* their plan.
17. He will leave for Hangehow *in* a month.
18. He chopped down the tree *with* an axe.
19. *Through* our class meetings we become very intimate.
20. *Besides* the jury (陪審官), the judge believed the prisoner to be guilty.
21. The three men divided it *among* themselves.
22. There is some trouble *in* the navy.
23. *Among* our English lessons, this is the most interesting.
24. It is impossible for me to return it to you *within* three days (在三天以内).
25. I saw this *in* Japan.

26. The lamp hangs *over* the table.
27. He failed *because* he did not work hard.
28. I wrote three letters and two notes in *addition*.
29. *Though* he is old, he is very healthy.
30. He labours day and night with a view to *becoming* rich.

## 練習 (53)

1. Please tell me *whether* you can speak English?
2. *Though* he is rich, he is not honest.
3. As he is ill, we should not be noisy.
4. Even *if* I were rich, I would work.
5. I do not know *whether* he is a Chinese or a Japanese.
6. The teacher said, "Do not use *even* as a conjunction."
7. This is a very useful dictionary, which cost me only one dollar.
8. *Although* he was very poor, he was always honest.
9. I do not know how he did it.
10. Even *if* it should rain, I would go.
11. The servant is honest and faithful, *so* his master trusts him with money.

12. As it was getting very late, we soon turned back.
13. Everyday I go to see my aunt, who loves me very much.
14. Though he is seasick, he must do his duties.
15. He said, "Honesty is the best policy."

## 練習 (54)

1. They could not leave the house because *of* a snowstorm.
2. You are strong *but* I am stronger.
3. He is *so* poor that he cannot afford to buy it.
4. He was vulgar as well as impolite.
5. The reason is *that* he has no money.
6. I will go *when* I receive his reply.
7. The sun must have set, *for* it is growing dark.
8. *If* you do not go away at once, I will send for a policeman.
9. We had scarcely left the house *when* it began to rain.
10. He worked hard, *that* he might gain a prize.
11. I had resigned before he *informed* me of the news.
12. This report is slightly different *from* that.
13. I like art and science as well.

14. The letter had been addressed to the wrong house. *Therefore* it never reached me.
15. He studied very hard *but* failed in the examination.
16. He could not work because *of* bad health.
17. The reason for this is *that* he is not honest.
18. It is going to rain, *for* the barometer (晴雨表) is falling.
19. He went to Paris, *so that* he might consult the physicians there.
20. Please wait till the rain becomes lighter.
21. I shall stay there until my business is concluded.
22. *If* you are not diligent, you will not advance in learning.
23. Before he was appointed (委任) to the post, he was a clerk.
24. He had hardly begun to speak *when* they interrupted (阻止) him.
25. He had scarcely heard the news when he wept aloud.
26. My plan is different *from* yours.
27. I like to dive as well as *to swim*.
28. He spoke *so* low that few could hear him.
29. He spoke loud that I might hear him.
30. He was not well. *Therefore* he could not go to school.

## 練習 (55)

1. When will you come?
2. How many apples are there?
3. *Is he* a student in your school?
4. *Is he* reading English or Chinese?
5. What is he reading?
6. *Who do you think* will teach us English?
7. I cannot tell where he is going.
8. *My dear* friend.
9. *Both his* feet are bare.
10. *All John's* books were lost.
11. I have never seen so good a man.
12. It is too rough a game for her.
13. This game is too rough for such a child.
14. *The only way to be happy* is to be contented.
15. *There is no other way to do it.*
16. *Is he* a Japanese or a Korean?
17. *Is London* the capital of England?
18. *Will the school* open on September 8th?
19. How many brothers has he?
20. When will he come to see you?
21. How many teachers were there in your school last year?
22. *When do you think* they will come?
23. Please ask him how many hours he will teach.

24. I do not know why he is absent.
25. *Both Liang's* parents were there yesterday.
26. *All my* time was spent in reading.
27. *All his* friends persuaded him to go.
28. I have never visited so good a school.
29. Mary is a too young girl to marry.
30. I never saw such a fine sight.

## 練習 (56)

1. I am also writing a letter.
2. You should always be just.
3. He will never succeed.
4. A storm is often followed by a calm.
5. They have just arrived.
6. I would rather not drink anything.
7. His father told him not to play football.
8. You will be in London by April.
9. I asked them how much they usually paid the beginners.
10. Please write it down.
11. I must send it off.
12. Don't carry it away.
13. Foreigners do not visit one another very often.
14. He left for England last month.
15. I have not written the sentences.

16. This point is often ignored.
17. I am just coming.
18. One can never master English without learning its idioms.
19. People will always laugh at you.
20. They are also preparing their lessons.

## 練習 (57)

1. I could not go on, nor could I turn back.
2. Not until war is outlawed will there *be* real peace.
3. Never again will I make such a trip alone.
4. Only when one understands a word should one try to use it.
5. Only for a week can I attend these lectures.
6. Scarcely had we reached home when it began to rain.
7. I cannot solve the problem, nor can he.
8. Not before counting the cost should you begin to build.
9. He cannot read, nor can he speak distinctly.
10. The man whom you speak of yesterday is not here.
11. We had almost no money left.
12. One should be slow and steady.
13. By no means will I consent.

14. Neither can his brother swim.
15. I stood still, nor *did he move*.

## 練習 (58)

1. I met (few, a few) *a few* people there.
2. As he has (few, a few) *few* friends, he cannot find a good job.
3. The ship sailed (across, cross) *across* the Pacific.
4. What would you (advise, advise) *advise* me to do?
5. They gave bad (advice, advise) *advice* to him.
6. I am rather (stupid, ignorant) *ignorant* on that subject.
7. He is too (stupid, ignorant) *stupid* to learn this.
8. Though a naughty boy, he is very (clever, wise) *clever* in learning mathematics.
9. This old man is very (wise, clever) *wise* for he can solve many difficult problems for us.
10. The sun (rises, raises) *rises* in the east and sets in the west.
11. He (rose, raised) *raised* his hat.
12. He (found, looked for) *found* a man concealed under the bed.



13. I am (looking for, finding) *looking for* a house.
14. I give you this, (because, for) *because* I love you.
15. He must be honest, (for, because) *for* he is loved by all.
16. I will not buy this, because I have (a little, little) *little* money in hand.
17. He (consulted, consulted with) *consulted* his physician about his health.
18. He (often, always) *often* comes to see me.
19. We have received (nearly, almost) *almost* no news.
20. The fire (arose, roused) *roused* the people from their sleep.

## 練習 (59)

1. I am (very, much) *much* astonished at what you tell me.
2. They found gold there and were (very, much) *much* pleased.
3. He started but a moment (ago, before) *ago*.
4. I last saw him three weeks (ago, before) *ago*.
5. I am (shameful, ashamed) *ashamed* of your conduct.

6. This is a (shameful, ashamed) *shameful* conduct.
7. (Beside, Besides) *Besides* advising, he gave them money.
8. He is standing (beside, besides) *beside* her.
9. He is a ( great, large) *great* soldier.
10. That was a (large, great) *great* entertainment.
11. From whom did you (lend, borrow) *borrow* this book?
12. I never (borrowed, lent) *borrowed* money from others.
13. I don't like his (childish, childlike) *childish* manners.
14. His (childlike, childish) *childlike* spirit is admirable.
15. How do you like the (climate, weather) *climate* of China?
16. The (climate, weather) *weather* was so bad that I could not come.
17. He (departed, parted) *departed* from Shanghai last evening.
18. I am sorry to (depart, part) *part* from my parents.
19. The baby was born (dead, died) *dead*.
20. The boy (was dead, died) *died* last night.

21. America was (discovered, invented) *discovered* by Columbus.
22. By whom was the electric lamp (invented, discovered) *invented*?
23. The three brothers helped (one another, each other) *one another*.
24. The two boys loved (each other, one another) *each other*.
25. (Owing to, Due to) *Owing to* ill health, he could not work.
26. He could not come (owing to, due to) *owing to* his illness.
27. (Owing to, Due to) *Owing to* repeated failures, he made no further attempt.
28. (Owing to, Due to) *Owing to* this difficulty, they failed in their attempt.
29. His success was (due to, owing to) *due to* perseverance.
30. His illness is (due to, owing to) *due to* weather.

練習 (60)

1. Mary is twelve years old. Her (elder, older) *elder* sister is twenty years old.
2. Both of them are (older, elder) *older* than I.

3. (Everyone, Every one) *Everyone* has his faults and virtues.
4. (Everyone, Every one) *Every one* of us has faults.
5. I (expect, hope) *expect* he will fail.
6. I sincerely (expect, hope) *hope* you will soon recover.
7. I (hope, wish) *hope* it will be fine tomorrow.
8. I (hope, wish) *wish* they were here.
9. The hotel (is fulfilled, is filled) *is filled* with guests.
10. The prophecy was (fulfilled, filled) *fulfilled*.
11. It is calculated on a (gold, golden) *gold* basis.
12. It is a (gold, golden) *golden* opportunity.
13. One must work as (hard, hardly) *hard* as possible.
14. I (hardly, hard) *hardly* believe it will rain.
15. The sea is running (highly, high) *high*.
16. He is (high, highly) *highly* pleased.
17. If you come home (late, lately) *late*, you will be locked out.
18. I have not heard from him (late, lately) *lately*.
19. Did you (listen, hear) *hear* anything about it?

20. Please (listen to, hear) *listen* to what I tell you.
21. He is (longer, taller) *taller* than you by two inches.
22. This rope is not so (long, tall) *long* as that one.
23. He came (later, latter) *later* than I expected.
24. I prefer the (latter, later) *latter* to the former.
25. (Can, May) *Can* she play piano as well as you?
26. (Can, May) *May* I ask a question?
27. The teacher asked the student to (memorize, memorialize) *memorize* the poem.
28. How can we (memorialize, memorize) *memorialize* those who have died for the country?
29. The (noise, voice) *noise* is annoying.
30. His (voice, noise) *voice* does not carry far.
31. It is a (pleasant, pleased) *pleasant* place to live in.
32. I shall be (pleasant, pleased) *pleased* to go if you will accompany me.
33. I must consult my (principle, principal) *principal*.
34. The (principle, principal) *principle* in both machines is the same.

## 練習 (61)

1. He (promised, permitted) *promised* me his help.
2. The master (promised, permitted) *permitted* the servant to depart.
3. He owns a (number, quantity) *number* of houses.
4. There is a large (number, quantity) *number* of chickens.
5. Please (sweep, brush, wipe) *sweep* away the snow.
6. We need to (sweep, brush, wipe) *brush* our hair.
7. He (swept, brushed, wiped) *wiped* the moisture from the corners of his eyes.
8. He (took, brought) *took* the letter to the post office.
9. Who has (taken, brought) *taken* my book?
10. I (took, brought) *brought* her a very handsome present from Paris.
11. He is (reading, studying) *reading* a newspaper.
12. He (reads, studies) *studies* English at school.
13. Russia was beaten in the (battle, war) *war* with Japan.

14. The (battle, war) *battle* was fought early in the morning.
15. He remained (royal, loyal) *loyal* to the king.
16. He serves in the (royal, loyal) *royal* household.
17. It is a (sleeping, asleep) *sleeping* car.
18. It is a (sleeping, asleep) *sleeping* sickness.
19. He was (naked, bare) *naked*.
20. One of his feet is (naked, bare) *bare*.
21. This boy looks very (beautiful, handsome) *handsome*.
22. How do you like this (beautiful, handsome) *beautiful* girl?
23. Many of the factories closed down owing to the depression of (business, commerce) *business*.
24. He is engaged in retail (business, commerce) *business*.
25. My (clothes, cloths) *clothes* were made to order.
26. Where did you get your (clothes, cloths) *clothes* made?
27. A, B, C, D are English (alphabets, letters) *letters*.
28. I have two books. I like (all, both) *both* of them.

29. It is not (certain, sure) *certain* whether there will be a meeting.
30. It is a (comforting, comfortable) *comforting* news.

## 練習 (62)

1. This place is (favourable, favourite) *favourable* place for study.
2. English is my (favourite, favourable) *favourite* subject.
3. It is a (flesh, fresh) *fresh* breeze.
4. He is losing (flesh, fresh) *fresh*.
5. The room is (hanged, hung) *hung* with pictures.
6. He (hanged, hung) *hung* himself in his own house.
7. He is love-sick on the (loving, lovely) *lovely* girl.
8. What agony it must be for the (loving, lovely) *loving* mother
9. It is a (momentous, momentary) *momentous* question.
10. There are (momentous, momentary) *momentary* interruptions.
11. He goes to Nanking twice a week, (namely, such as) *namely* Wednesdays and Saturdays.
12. Birds of prey, (namely, such as) *such as* the eagle and the hawk, do not lay many legs.



13. It (took, cost) *cost* him a good deal of trouble.
14. It (took, cost) *took* him a year to write the book.
15. (Bread, Loaf) *Bread* is the staff of life.
16. This is the only (loaf, bread) *loaf* that he has.
17. He (defended, resisted) *defended* himself stoutly.
18. They (resisted, defended) *resisted* the invading troops.
19. His fortune is favourable and unfavourable (in turn, by turns) *in turn*.
20. The students answer the teacher's question (in turn, by turns) *by turns*.
21. He sat (in the front of, in front of) *in front of* me at the theatre.
22. There are four trees (in the front of, in front of) *in the front of* the garden.
23. He put the kettle (on fire, on the fire) *on the fire*.
24. We saw the buildings (on fire, on the fire) *on fire*.
25. This (poem, poetry) *poem* is a fine work.
26. He wrote very good (poem, poetry) *poetry*.
27. He pointed out many such (examples, samples) *examples*.
28. I will write to the company for some (samples, examples) *samples*.

# 英文自學叢書

【已出版者】

中文英譯法 李志英編

英文中譯法 李志英編

單元編制初步英文法 趙鴻雋編

單元編制初步英文造句法 趙鴻雋編

句式分析英文閱讀法 陳徐堃編

中文講解英文正誤法 邵鴻齋編

對譯加註初級英文論說文範 丁浩霖編

【排印中者】

初步步英文報讀法 錢天祐編

初步步英文尺牘法 聖輔編

初步步英文會話法 陳徐堃編

英文單字記憶法 錢天祐編

英文圖解法 史康編

## A Guide to Correct English

中華民國三十七年四月三版

中文講解 英文正誤法 全一册

▲實價國幣 ▼

外埠酌加運費匯費

主編者 英語教育改進社

編著者 邵鴻 龔

審訂者 詹文 澣

發行人 李煜 瀛

印刷者 世界書局

發行所 世界書局

▲有著作權 翻印必究 ▼

上海图书馆藏书



A541 212 0017 5851B

